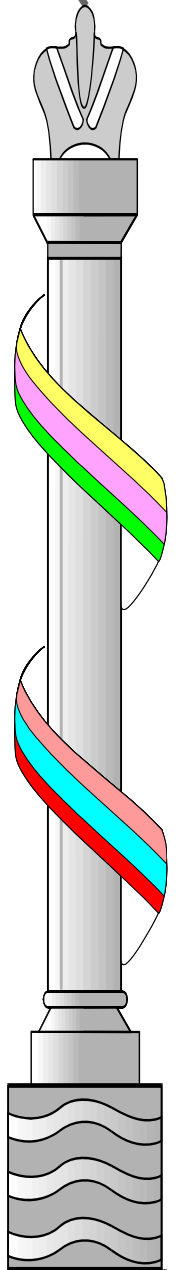
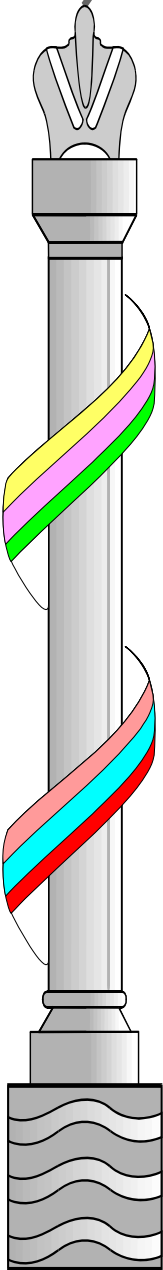


Secondary Two



UNITS (1 - 9)



Contents

No	Title	Page
1	Unit 1	4 - 25
Unit One	Vocabulary	4 - 5
	Language Notes	5 - 8
	Communication Skills	9
	Exercises on Vocabulary	9 - 11
	Grammar	11 - 20
	Exercises on Grammar	20 - 23
	Test 1	23 - 25
2	Unit 2	26 - 42
Unit Two	Vocabulary	26 - 27
	Language Notes	27 - 29
	Communication Skills	29 - 30
	Exercises on Vocabulary	30 - 32
	Grammar	33 - 37
	Exercises on Grammar	37 - 40
	Test 2	40 - 42
3	Unit 3	43 - 56
Unit Three	Vocabulary	43 - 45
	Language Notes	45 - 47
	Communication Skills	47
	Exercises on Vocabulary	47 - 50
	Grammar	50 - 52
	Exercises on Grammar	52 - 54
	Test 3	54 - 56
4	Unit 4	57 - 73
Unit Four	Vocabulary	57 - 59
	Language Notes	59 - 60
	Communication Skills	60
	Exercises on Vocabulary	60 - 63
	Grammar	64 - 67
	Exercises on Grammar	67 - 71
	Test 4	71 - 73
5	Unit 5	74 - 87
Unit Five	Vocabulary	74 - 75
	Language Notes	75 - 77
	Communication Skills	77
	Exercises on Vocabulary	78 - 80
	Grammar	80 - 83
	Exercises on Grammar	83 - 85
	Test 5	85 - 87

6	Unit 6	88 – 105
Unit six	Vocabulary	88 – 89
	Language Notes	90 – 91
	Exercises on Vocabulary	91 – 94
	Grammar	94 – 10
	Exercises on Grammar	101 – 103
	Test 6	103 - 105
7	Unit 7	106 – 119
Unit Seven	Vocabulary	106 – 107
	Language Notes	107 – 108
	Communication Skills	108
	Exercises on Vocabulary	109 – 111
	Grammar	111 – 114
	Exercises on Grammar	114 – 117
	Test 7	117 - 119
8	Unit 8	120 – 131
Unit Eight	Vocabulary	120 – 121
	Language Notes	121 – 123
	Exercises on Vocabulary	123 – 125
	Grammar	126 – 127
	Exercises on Grammar	127 – 129
	Test 8	129 - 131
9	Unit 9	132 – 145
Unit Nine	Vocabulary	132 – 134
	Language Notes	134 – 135
	Communication Skills	135
	Exercises on Vocabulary	136 – 138
	Grammar	139 – 140
	Exercises on Grammar	140 – 142
	Test 9	143 - 145

Unit 1 - The World Of Work

accountant	محاسب	encourage	يشجع	organisation	منظمة
across	عبر	encouragement	تشجيع	organise	ينظم
adopt	يتكيف	excited about	مثار - مهتم بـ	out of job	عاطل
air conditioning	تكييف هواء	facilities	تسهيلات	professor	أستاذ جامعي
architect	مهندس معماري	fantastic	رائع	programmer	مبرمج
autobiography	سيره ذاتيه	field	مجال	proud	فخور
award	يمنح جائزه	form	يكون - يشكل	proud of	فخور
benefit	يستفيد - فائدة	free of charge	مجانا	qualification	تأهيل
bold	واضح	general practitioner	ممارس عام	qualifications	مؤهلات
bridge	كوبرى	graduate	يتخرج	qualify	يتأهل
centre	مركز	grand children	أحفاد	quite like	تماما مثل
charity	جمعية	guesses	تخمينات	receptionist	موظف إستقبال
check	يفحص	heart surgery	جراحة قلب	research	بحث
civil engineer	مهندس مدني	heart transplant	زراعة قلب	responsible for	مسئول عن
collect	يجمع	human cells	خلايا بشرية	responsible of	مسئول من
collection	جمع	infrastructure	بنية تحتية	retire	يتقاعد
context	سياق الكلام	injection	حقنة	Retirement age	سن التقاعد
count	يعد / يحسب	institute	معهد	salesperson	بائع
deaf	أطرش	intensely	بكثافة	set up	يؤسس
deafness	طرش - صمم	interview	مقابلة - حوار	special	خاص
delegate	ينتدب - يفوض	journalist	صحفي	Specialist	متخصص
delegation	وفد	keep	يحفظ	surgeon	جراح
design	يضع تصميم	keep records	يحفظ بيانات	surgery room	حجرة العمليات
designer	مصمم	laboratory	معمل	take note of	يدون ملاحظات
device	يبتكر - يخترع	law	قانون	take place	يحدث
difference	مختلف	lawyer	محامي	techniques	تقنيات - وسائل
direct	يوجه	leadership	قيادة	topics	موضوعات
disability	إعاقه	main	رئيسي	train	يتدرب
discuss	يناقش	marital status	حالة اجتماعية	treat	يعالج
donate	يتبرع	nursing staff	هيئة تمريض	treatment	علاج
drum	طبل	operation	عملية جراحية	uniform	زي موحد
education	تعليم	organization	منظمة	Veterinary /vet	طبيب بيطري

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
Lead	يقود	Leader	قائد	Leading	هام
		leadership	قيادة		
Operate	يجري جراحة	Operation	عملية		
		operator	عامل التليفون		
Qualify	يتأهل	Qualifications	مؤهلات	Qualified	مؤهل
Research	يقوم بأبحاث	Research	بحث		
		Researcher	باحث		
Retire	يتقاعد	retirement	تقاعد	Retired	متقاعد
		Surgery	جراحة	Surgical	جراحي
		Surgeon	جراح		
delegate	يوفد	delegation	وفد		

Important Vocabulary

decline	ينخفض / انخفاض	non-governmental	غير حكومي
flourish	يزدهر	opponents	المعارضون
horizons	آفاق	supporters	مويدون
human rights	حقوق الإنسان	war victims	ضحايا الحروب
life insurance	التأمين علي الحياة	with regard to فيما	يتعلق بـ

Expressions

adapt to	يتأقلم علي / يتكيف مع	good at = clever at	ماهر في
apply for (a job/a visa)	يتقدم بطلب لـ (وظيفة/تأشيرة)	good for	مفيد لـ
apply in person	يتقدم بالطلب شخصياً	have experience in	لديه خبرة في
apply in writing	يتقدم بالطلب كتابةً	interested in	مهتم بـ
apply to (a company)	يتقدم بطلب (للشركة)	look up	يبحث عن معلومة (في كتاب أو قاموس)
at the age of	في سن	play a part in	يلعب دوراً في
at the weekend	في نهاية الأسبوع	play a role in	يلعب دوراً في
benefit from	يستفيد من	reason for	سبب
cause of	سبب	report on	يقدم تقرير عن
children with heart problems	أطفال يعانون من مشكلات في القلب	see off	يودع
find out	يكشف	study at (school)	يدرس في
from all over the world	من كل أنحاء العالم	under the leadership of	تحت قيادة

Words & antonyms كلمات و عكسها

continue	يستمر	stop	يتوقف
dead	ميت	alive	علي قيد الحياة
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
important	هام	unimportant	غير هام
leader	قائد / زعيم	follower	تابع
major	رئيسي	minor	ثانوي
married	متزوج	unmarried/single	أعزب
modern	حديث	ancient / historic	قديم
special	خاص / مميز	ordinary / usual / normal	عادي

Language Notes

- لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (on) في الحالات الآتية:

on TV	في التلفزيون	on the radio	في الراديو	on the telephone	علي التلفون
On the internet	علي الانترنت	on show	معروض	on display	معروض
On duty	في الخدمة	on business	في مهمة عمل	on foot	سيراً علي الاقدام
On purpose	عمداً	on the whole	بصفة عامة	on holiday	في اجازة
On my way to	في الطريق إلى	on both sides of the street			علي جانبي الشارع

- يستخدم حرف الجر (on) مع اليوم و تاريخ اليوم و التعبيرات الدالة علي اليوم:

- on Monday, Friday, Sunday

- on April 5th , 2010

- on(holiday, my birthday,)

- يستخدم (in) مع الشهور و السنين و بعض فترات اليوم:

- In (May, April, August.../ 2010)

- In the (morning / afternoon / evening)

- كما يستخدم حرف الجر (at) مع الساعة و بعض التعبيرات الزمنية مثل:

- At (six o'clock / half past nine / quarter to three)

- At (noon / night / midday / midnight / the weekend ...)

- Qualify as (يتأهل كـ (يأتي بعدها الوظيفة) -He qualified as a teacher two years ago.
- Qualify in (يحصل علي مؤهل في (تخصص معين) - He qualified in biology last year.
- be qualified to + inf. يكون مؤهل لكي. - She is qualified to teach science.

- die of (a disease / hunger / thirst...) يموت من (مرض / جوع / عطش...)
- die from (a wound / an injury ...) يموت من (جرح / إصابة / لدغة عقرب أو عنكبوت...)

- historic = (places / events / moments / date / building / speech....etc.) ذو أهمية تاريخية
- Tourists usually visit the historic places in Egypt.

- historical مرتبط بدراسة التاريخ/ من التاريخ
- historical research / papers, دراسات / studies, مسرحيات / novels

- لاحظ استخدام فعل (have) بمعاني مختلفة ويأتي في الأزمنة المختلفة:
- have a meeting لديه اجتماع
- have a bath يأخذ دشا
- have a shower يأخذ دشا
- have an exam لديه امتحان
- have a meal يتناول وجبة
- have a party يقيم حفلة

- Help.....to + inf. - He helped me to do the job.
- help ...+ inf. - He helped me do the job.
- help..... with + n. - He helped me with the job.

- arrive (يصل (بدون مفعول) - Your father arrived an hour ago.
- arrive in (Cairo/ Italy/ Makah....) دولة - We arrived in London at nine o'clock.
- arrive at (school / the station/ the airport/ the cinema)
- reach + مفعول لا يستخدم معها حرف جر - We reached London at nine o'clock.
- reach (a goal / يحقق هدف / a decision / يصل لقرار / a conclusion / يتوصل للنتيجة)

- لاحظ استخدام كلمة (project):

- Do a (science / historical..) project يقوم بإعداد بحث أو دراسة في موضوع معين
- Carry out a project ينفذ مشروع (اقتصادي / خدمي)

- Do / carry out / perform an operation يقوم بإجراء عملية جراحية
- The doctor did (carried out / performed) an operation on grandpa.
- Have an operation تجري له عملية جراحية - Grandpa had an operation yesterday.

- learn to+ inf. - He learned to use a computer.
- learn how to+ inf. - He learned how to use a computer.

- fill in=complete an application or a form يقوم بملء طلب أو استمارة
- I filled in my form and handed it to the secretary.

- لاحظ التراكيب الآتية:

- The reason I (like / enjoy/ prefer / take.....) + is that
- The reason I like this restaurant is that they serve delicious food.
- The reason I (don't like/ enjoy / eat...) +is that...
- The reason I don't enjoy the trip is that the weather is hot.
- The best / worst thing about is أن هو أسوأ شيء في ... هو أن
- The best thing about living here is the fine weather.
- The main reason is that...السبب الرئيسي هو أن... - The main reason is that I don't have enough money.
- I enjoy / love + V+ing - I enjoy travelling because I meet different people.

- Decide to + inf. يختار / يحدد = make up (his) mind to + inf.
- I decided to eat fish . = - I made up my mind to eat fish.
- Decide on+ n. / G. = choose : يختار - My parents decided on a name for my baby sister.
- Decide that + جملة - The doctor decided that I must stay in bed.

- لاحظ استخدام الفعل (fall) بمعنى (become):

- fall unconscious فاقد الوعي
- fall ill يمرض
- fall asleep ينام
- Do / carry out research on/into يقوم بعمل أبحاث
- I did (carried out) a lot of research on plants.
- Scientists carry out research into the causes of global warming.
- research + something = do research on يقوم بإجراء أبحاث علي
- He researched methods of treating cancer.

-take notes on يَنْتَبِه	-I had to take notes on the teacher's explanation. شرح / تفسير.
-make notes of يدون	-Can I make notes of your comment, please?
- Surgeon جراح	-A famous surgeon carried out the operation.
- Physician طبيب معالج	-A good physician prescribed وصف this medicine to her.
- graduate from يتخرج من	- I graduated from the Faculty of Arts كلية الاداب in
- a graduate of خريج	- I am a graduate of the Faculty of Arts.
- graduate with a degree in يتخرج بشهادة فى	- I graduated with a degree in English.
Salary مرتب شهرى أو سنوى (اسم يعد)	- Salaries are generally low in Egypt.
Wage أجره (بالساعة أو اليوم أو الأسبوع) اسم يعد	-The carpenter's wage is high.
Fees أتعاب - أجر (محامى / دكتور..)	- Lawyers' fees are very high.
Fare أجره التاكسى / الاتوبيس / الطائرة / الباخرة	-I gave the fare to the driver as soon as I had arrived.
Work عمل - مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد)	- My sister starts work at eight o'clock.
-I have a lot of work to do after lunch.	
Job وظيفة - مهنة (اسم يعد)	-We did a lot of jobs at school last Monday.
-She has got a job as a secretary.	- He started his career as a writer five years ago.
Career مهنة / الحياه المهنية للفرد	-Football has become a profession, not a hobby.
Profession مهنة (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب)	
-Occupation مهنة ووظيفة وتستخدم في الاستمارات الحكومية	- Please, fill in the form with your name, age and occupation
stay with يقيم مع شخص	-He stayed with his uncle in Port Said.
stay (at - in) يقيم فى مكان	-They will stay at / in a hotel.
- For free = free of charge = at no charge مجاني	- Policemen used to travel free of charge (for free / at no charge) .
- contribute to + v. ing / noun يساهم فى	- Everybody should contribute to developing(the development of) our country.
care for= look after (بشخص) يرعى/ يعتني بـ	-Sons and daughter must care for their old parents.
Care for = want يريد	- I care for this car. I want to buy it.
care about something يهتم	- He doesn't care about his studies.
train ... in يدرب علي	- Children should be trained in good manners.
train as + وظيفة يتدرب كـ	- She trained as a cook.
train for (سباق مثلا) يتدرب لـ	- He trains hard for the race.
good at + v.ing / n. جيد في	- He is good at (learning) English.
good to طيب مع	- She is good to old people.
good for مفيد / صالح لـ	-Green vegetables are good for you.
- biography سيرة ذاتية لشخص يكتبها شخص آخر	- Famous people have many biographies written about them.
- autobiography سيرة ذاتية لشخص يكتبها الشخص نفسه	- He refused to publish his autobiography.
- retire يحال للمعاش (يتقاعد)	- When the employee is 60, he retires.
- resign يستقيل (من العمل)	- Hesham resigned his job and travelled abroad.
- across(all over / around) the world علي مستوي العالم	
- Luxor is well known across (all over / around) the world.	
-apply for يتقدم بطلب وظيفة	- I applied for hundreds of jobs .
- apply to يتقدم لشخص أو شركة	- I'll apply to the manager soon.
- apply in writing يتقدم كتابة لطلب وظيفة	- Apply in writing, no one will hear you.

- proud of =take pride in... فخور بـ - Her parents are proud of (take pride in) her.

- well known to + شخص (معروف لدي) -Egyptian history is well- known to all people.

- well-known for مشهور بـ -Ramses is well- known for his temples and statues

hard / hardly -The exam was very hard. صعب -Wood is a very hard material . صلب
-He is a hard worker. مجد / مجتهد -You must study hard. حال ومغناها بجد

-(hardly) بالكاد/بصعوبة (تقريباً لا شيء)

-I can hardly remember his name. -There is hardly any food in the fridge.

- Where do you come from? للسؤال عن الجنسية

= What's your nationality? = Which country do you come from?

-What do you do? = What's your job? = What do you do for a living?

- Where do you live? = What's your address?

-What's your date of birth? = When were you born? للسؤال عن تاريخ الميلاد

- What's your marital status? = Are you single or married? للسؤال عن الحالة الاجتماعية (أعزب أو متزوج)

Make		Do	
make a discovery	يكتشف	do a favour	يقدم خدمة أو معروف
make a fire	يشعل ناراً	do a hobby	يقوم بهواية
make a choice	يختار	do (his) hair	يصفف شعره
make a decision	يقرر	do a job	يؤدي وظيفة
make a difference to	يحدث اختلاف / فرق	do a project	يقوم بعمل بحث / دراسة
make a journey	يقوم برحلة	do a quiz	يقوم بعمل مسابقة
make a medicine	يصنع دواء	do a report on	يعد تقرير عن
make a mistake	يخطئ	do an operation	يقوم بعملية جراحية
make a noise	يثير ضوضاء	do better	يتحسن
make a phone call	يعمل مكالمة	do business	يقوم بعمل تجاري
make a plan	يخطط	do damage	يدمر
make a promise	يوعد	do exercise	يقوم بتدريب
make a question	يسأل	do good	يفيد
make a suggestion	يقترح	do harm	يضر
make a trip	يقوم برحلة	do his best	ي بذل قصارى جهده
make a trouble	يسبب متاعب	do homework	يعمل الواجب
make achievements	يحقق إنجازات	do PhD	يعمل دكتوراة
make clear	يوضح	do repairs	يقوم باصلاحات
make contributions	يقوم بإسهامات	do research	يقوم ببحث علمي
make friends	يعمل صداقات	do something/nothing	يفعل شيء (لا شيء)
make lunch/dinner	يعد الغداء / العشاء	do the cleaning	يقوم بالتنظيف
make money	يكسب مالا	do the cooking	يقوم بالطهي
make parts of cars	يصنع أجزاء السيارات	do the homework	يقوم بواجباته المدرسية
make peace	يحقق السلام	do the housework	يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية
make sense	له معنى	do the shopping	يتسوق
make sure	يتأكد	do the sweeping	يقوم بالكس
make the bed	يرتب السرير	do the washing up	يقوم بغسل الأواني
make up (his) mind	يقرر	do without	يستغني عن
make war	يشن حرب	do work	يقوم بعمل
		do wrong	يخطئ

Communication Skills

Liking and disliking

Asking about opinion	Expressing liking	Expressing disliking
-Do you like.....?	-I am fond of بمغرم.....	-I don't like.
-What do you think about..?	- I like it/them.	- I dislike.....
-What do you think of..?	- It is fantastic / great/brilliant	-I am not very keen....
-What is your opinion of...?	-I am mad about/ crazy about...	-I am not fond of.....
- Do you have any thing to say about.....?	-I am keen متحمس لـ / ميل اليه	-I detest / loathe / despise يكره الشيء بشدة

Expressing opinions with reasons

I think / believe...because...	<i>I think(believe) he will be late because he missed the bus to school.</i>
In my opinion / view...as...	<i>In my opinion, we should visit him at home as he is ill.</i>
If you ask me, ...so that...	<i>If you ask me, we should help her so that she can finish the cooking.</i>

Exercises

Respond to each of the following situation:

- 1- A friend wants to know what job you would like to do when you leave school.
- 2- A friend asks you why you want to be a doctor.
- 3- A relative wants to know the best thing about your school.
- 4- You ask a passer-by about the time.

where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

- 1- A : I have pain in my stomach. B : Since when. A: Yesterday. B: Let me examine you.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 2- A: What are you doing there? B: I'm cooking lunch. A: Be quick, please. I'm too hungry.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 3- A: How often should I take this drug, please? B: Twice daily.
A: How much is it? B: Thirty five pounds.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

Choose the correct answer:

- 1- My sister got before she was accepted for the job.
a) a meeting b) a conference c) a visit d) an interview
- 2- Tourists are always seen in front of famous museums and buildings.
a) history b) historian c) historic d) historical
- 3- The reason his failure in the exam was that he didn't study hard.
a) on b) of c) for d) from
- 4- There's a factory in our town which parts for cars and buses.
a) does b) takes c) works d) makes

- 5- A company sends a when it needs people to speak for it at a meeting.
a) group b) delegation c) car d) worker
- 6- Although he retired as a surgeon, he continued to new treatments.
a) research b) search c) look d) see
- 7- Everyone mistakes when they're learning something new.
a) does b) takes c) works d) makes
- 8- The status of a person shows whether he / she is married.
a) social b) financial c) marital d) mental
- 9- Graduates who apply the job must be fluent in English.
a) on b) about c) for d) with
- 10- When the employee reaches the age of 60, he / she
a) recycles b) retired c) starves d) survives
- 11- He studied medicine at Cairo university and as a doctor.
a) applied b) supplied c) qualified d) tried
- 12- My sister who works for a charitable organization believes that her work a difference in people's lives.
a) takes b) works c) has d) makes
- 13- Ahmed worked his project all day.
a) out b) against c) up d) on
- 14- A is the person who writes for newspapers and magazines.
a) news reporter b) surgeon c) receptionist d) lawyer
- 15- We can benefit old newspapers by recycling.
a) from b) by c) of d) with
- 16- Our are the children of our children.
a) parents b) ancestors c) grandparents d) grandchildren
- 17- He became interested computers at school.
a) at b) on c) by d) in
- 18- She is a news reporter. She enjoys different people.
a) meet b) meeting c) to meet d) with meeting
- 19- It's been more than 20 years since surgeons the first heart transplant operation in Britain.
a) made b) worked c) took d) did
- 20- He works a company that writes computer programs.
a) for b) on c) at d) out
- 21- He had to move every few years, so he learnt to to different situations.
a) adopt b) adapt c) apply d) use
- 22- He decided to be a heart surgeon when his aunt died a heart problem.
a) by b) from c) with d) of
- 23- We can install in a modern building if it is too hot.
a) air conditioning b) heater c) lights d) parts
- 24- A trade from Europe arrived in Egypt two weeks ago.
a) team b) band c) delegation d) gang
- 25- He hasn't filled in the form for his passport yet.
a) application b) complication c) completion d) appliance
- 26- If you me, people should go on a training course before they become parents.
a) say b) tell c) talk d) ask
- 27- They are some fascinating research on the language of dolphins.
a) carrying b) doing c) making d) working
- 28- What is the normal age for people in Egypt?
a) retirement b) retreat c) retiring d) retired
- 29- I want to travel because I enjoy new places.
a) see b) saw c) seen d) seeing
- 30- Professor Magdi Yacoub did a lot of heart operations.
a) transport b) transplant c) transfusion d) transfer
- 31- Surgeons do on people in hospitals.
a) applications b) operations c) research d) business
- 32- A is a doctor who does operations in a hospital.

- a) surgeon b) receptionist c) reporter d) teacher
- 33- He was highly qualified. this reason, he was accepted for the job.
a) At b) With c) For d) To
- 34- He a lot of important work in his life.
a) made b) did c) took d) worked
- 35- Professor Magdi Yacoub many heart transplant operations.
a) make b) do c) take d) work
- 36- Professor Magdi Yacoub was part of a team which new heart parts from human cells.
a) make b) do c) take d) work
- 37- A surgeon is a person who operations.
a) makes b) carries c) performs d) works
- 38- I like as a hotel receptionist because every day is different.
a) work b) to work c) worked d) working

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Dr. Magdy Yacoub made many heart transplant operations.
2. Egypt sent a trade allegation to the conference.
3. He does a lot of mistakes in mathematics.
4. He doesn't know what job he would like to make.
5. He enjoys helping his brothers and sisters to make their homework.
6. He had a kidney transport last year.
7. He had the qualifications and experience to make great things.
8. He saved people's lives by making heart transplants.
9. He traveled in small planes to find health hearts for transplants.
10. I have been working at a new project since February.
11. My brother has a very difficult decision to do next week.
12. On my opinion, computers are magic.
13. Policemen usually wear a platform.
14. She felt ashamed because she did a silly mistake.
15. She helped me doing the job.
16. She is interested on reading newspapers.
17. She worked as a surgeon before she made research on new treatments.
18. The better thing about this job is that it is well paid.
19. The normal requirement age in Egypt is 60.
20. What are people's main reasons of continuing to work when they are older?
21. What do your do? – I'm reading a story.
22. Whatever career he chooses, he wants to do a difference in people's lives.

Grammar

1 - The present simple tense المضارع البسيط

Form

Subj. فاعل + inf. المصدر +

- I get up at six o'clock every morning.

- They sometimes go for a walk on Fridays.

- يضاف للفعل (s) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (he/ she /it) :

-Kareem (he) likes football very much.

- ويضاف للفعل (es) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (he/ she /it) إذا كان المصدر منتهياً بـ (ch-sh-ss-o-x) :

- Aya (she) watches action films.

- ويضاف للفعل (ies) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (he/ she /it) إذا كان المصدر منتهياً بـ (y) مسبقاً بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف (y) :

- Eman (she) studies English for an hour everyday.

Negation

Subj. فاعل + don't / doesn't + inf. المصدر +

- لاحظ تستخدم doesn't مع المفرد الغائب :

-I don't get up at six o'clock every morning.

- Kareem (he) doesn't like football very much.

- Aya (she) doesn't watch action films.

- Eman (she) doesn't study English for an hour everyday.

- و نستخدم (never) ايضاً بالنفي:

- He doesn't help the poor. = He never helps the poor.
-They don't come early. = they never come early.

Yes / No Q Do / Does + Subj. فاعل + inf. المصدر + ?

- Do you get up at six o'clock every morning?
-Yes, I do. - Yes, I get up at six o'clock every morning.
- No, I don't. - No, I don't get up at six o'clock every morning.
- Does Aya (she) watch action films?
-Yes, she does. - Yes, she watches action films.
-No, she doesn't. - No, she doesn't watch action films.

- و لاحظ السؤال بالفعل المساعد المنفي:

- Doesn't Mostafa enjoy playing tennis? - Yes, he doesn't. - No, he does.

' Wh..' Q. Q.W. + اداة استفهام do / does + Subj. فاعل + inf. المصدر + ... ?

- What do you eat for dessert? -How often does Reham go to the club?

- لاحظ السؤال بـ (who) :

- Aya waits for her friends at the school gate.
-Who (does) wait for her friends at the school gate? - Who does Aya wait for at the school gate?
- يفضل عدم استخدام (do / does) بعد (who) عندما تسأل عن الفاعل الا للتأكيد

Passive Obj المفعول + am / is / are+ p.p.

- Farmers grow plants. - Plants are grown by farmers.
- Some people don't eat meat at all. - Meat isn't eaten at all by some people.
- عند عطف فعل مبني للمجهول علي آخر لا يتكرر استخدام الفعل المساعد الا في حالة تكرار المفعول:
- They pump water to the surface and heat it to make steam.
- Water is pumped to the surface and heated to make steam.

Verb to (have) with the present simple

Form Subj. فاعل + have / has +

- تستخدم (has) مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب:
- تستخدم (have / has) بمعنى يمتلك / عنده / لديه:
- I have a house with a small garden. - Aya has a lot of jewellery.
- تستخدم (have / has) بمعاني أخرى مثل يأكل / يري الخ:
- They have lunch at three o'clock. - Ahmed has bad dreams every night.

- اذا كانت (have / has) بمعنى يمتلك / عنده / لديه يكون النفي باحدي الطريقتين التاليتين:

- 1- Subj. فاعل + haven't / hasn't +
- I haven't a house with a small garden. - Aya hasn't much jewellery.
2- Subj. فاعل + don't / doesn't + have +
- I don't have a house with a small garden. - Aya doesn't have much jewellery.
- اذا كانت (have / has) بمعاني أخرى مثل يأكل / يري الخ يكون النفي بطريقة واحدة كالتالي:
- Subj. فاعل + don't / doesn't + have +
- They don't have lunch at three o'clock. - Ahmed doesn't have bad dreams every night.

- اذا كانت (have / has) بمعنى يمتلك / عنده / لديه يكون السؤال بـ " هل " باحدي الطريقتين التاليتين:

- 1- Have / Has + Subj. فاعل + ?
- Have you a house with a small garden?
- Yes, I have (a house with a small garden.) - No, I haven't (a house with a small garden.)
- Has Aya much jewellery?
- Yes, she has (much jewellery). - No, she hasn't (much jewellery).

2- Do /Does + Subj. **فاعل** + have +

- Do you have a house with a small garden? - Yes, I do. / - No, I don't.
 - Does Aya have much jewellery? - Yes, she does. / - No, she doesn't.
 - إذا كانت (have / has) بمعاني أخرى مثل يأكل / يري الخ يكون السؤال بـ "هل" بطريقة واحدة كالتالي:
 - Do /Does + Subj. **فاعل** + have +
 - Do they have lunch at three o'clock? - Yes, they do. / - No, they don't.
 - Does Ahmed have bad dreams every night? - Yes, he does. / - No, they doesn't.
 - و ينطبق نفس الكلام علي السؤال باداة استفهام و لا داعي للتكرار

لا يستخدم (have / has) في المبني للمجهول ويستبدل بفعل آخر حسب المعني :

Have = own – possess – belong to – suffer – eat – buy – spend – take

- I have a car. - A car is (possessed – owned) by me.
 - She has lunch at two o'clock. - Lunch is eaten at two o'clock by her.

Verb to (be) with the present simple

Form Subj. **فاعل** + am / is / are +

- تستخدم (am / is / are) كفعل أساسي في المضارع البسيط بمعني (يكون أو يوجد):
 - I am eighteen years old. - Ali is at home now. - We are happy to see you here.
 - تستخدم (am / is / are) للنفي و السؤال ولا تبني جملتها للمجهول

Uses of the present simple

- 1 - to express facts: التعبير عن حقائق -The moon goes round the Earth.
 2 - to express habits: التعبير عن عادات -He always comes late.

- Subj. **فاعل** + usually..... = It+ is +someone's habit to + inf...
 = Subj. **فاعل** + be + in the habit of + v.ing... = Subj. **فاعل** + be + used to + v.ing / n.

- Ali usually eats fruit for dessert. **الكلو بعد الاكل** = It is Ali's (his) habit to eats fruit for dessert .
 = Ali is in the habit of eating fruit for dessert. = Ali is used to eating fruit for dessert.

ملاحظات عامة

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع ظروف التكرار الآتية وتأتي قبل الفعل الأساسي او بعد (verb to be) و احيانا تأتي في بداية او نهاية الجملة :

Always- sometimes- usually- often-occasionally- rarely-
 scarcely-seldom-regularly- frequently - generally - monthly -

- He always comes late. -He is always late.
 - I sometimes go fishing. = Sometimes, I go fishing. =I go fishing sometimes.
 - لاحظ الكلمات السابقة بوجه عام تنفى بـ rarely/ scarcely / seldom/ never
 - I always get up early. - I never get up early.
 -She usually watches TV at night. -She rarely watches TV at night.
 - يستخدم مع الكلمات الآتية في بداية أو نهاية الجملة :

Every (day/night/ Monday/ week/ month/year.....etc.
 at night/in the mornina/at noon/in the evenina.....etc.

- We watch TV every night. - Every night, he watches TV.

استخدامات أخرى للمضارع البسيط

1 - يستخدم مع أفعال الشعور والحواس والادراك والعاطفة والتفكير بدلا من المضارع المستمر:

like, **dislike**, love, think, seem, look, know, feel, understand, want, need, hate, see, remember, forget, prefer, believe, mean, taste, hear, have, possess, own, belong,..... etc.

- I prefer his way in thinking.

- He enjoys reading romantic novels.

2- يستخدم مع الحالة الأولى من (if) و يدل علي المستقبل :

- If you play well, you will win.

3- يستخدم مع الروابط الزمنية و يدل علي المستقبل:

- After he arrives, we will eat.

- They will not go until he gives them money.

4- يعبر عن الحقائق التي تدوم لفترة :

- I work in a bank .

5- يستخدم مع جداول المواعيد:

- The train arrives at 10:15 pm.

- We have English at ten every Sunday.

6- يستخدم المضارع البسيط في حالة طلب أو إعطاء التعليمات و الاتجاهات :

- How do I get to the station?

- You go straight on, and then you turn left.

Verb + ing

- كيفية اضافة (ing) للفعل:

1 - inf. المصدر + ing:

- read → reading

- visit → visiting

2 - اذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) فانه يحذف قبل اضافة (ing) :

- Write → writing

- make → making

- change → changing

- ويشذ عن ذلك الفعلين dye/ singe :

- Dye يصبغ → dyeing

- singe يلسع → singeing

3- اذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبق بحرف متحرك واحد و كان الفعل يتكون من مقطع واحد او اكثر بشرط أن يكون المقطع الاخير قويا في النطق فانه يضاعف الحرف الاخير قبل اضافة (ing) :

- run → running

- travel → travelling

- stop → stopping

- open → opening

- cover → covering

- answer → answering

4 - اذا انتهى الفعل بالحرفين (ie) فانهما يتحولا الي (y) قبل اضافة (ing) :

- die → dying

- tie → tying

5- اذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل اضافة (ing) :

- panic → panicking

- picnic → picnicking

2-The Active present Continuous Tense

- تتكون جملة المضارع المستمر المبني للمعلوم من:

Form Subj. فاعل + am / is/ are + V. ing.....

- Ali (he) is reading a story.

- I am running fast.

- Aya and Heba (They) are cooking lunch.

Negation Subj. فاعل + am not / is not (isn't)/ are not (aren't) + V. ing. .

- Ali (he) is not (isn't) reading a story.

- I am not running fast.

- Aya and Heba (They) are not (aren't) cooking lunch.

Yes / No Q. Am / Is / Are + Subj. فاعل + V. ing..... ?

- Is Ali (he) reading a story ?

- Yes, he is (reading a story).

- Are you running fast?

- Yes, I am.

= Yes, I am ('m) running fast .

- No, I am not.

= No, I am not ('m not) running fast .

Wh-' Q. Q.W. اداة استفهام + am / is/ are + Subj. فاعل + V. ing.... ?

- What is Ali doing (reading) ?

- Who is running fast ?

Passive Obj لمفعول + am / is / are+ being + p.p.

- Ali is reading a story.

- A story is being read by Ali.

- She is watering the plants.

- The plants are being watered (by her).

- My father is helping me with my homework.

- I am being helped with my homework (by my father).

الاستخدامات Uses

1-To express actions that are happening now: التعبير عن أحداث تقع أثناء التحدث

- I am revising for my test. - They are watching inspector crombo .

2 -To express actions around the present : التعبير عن أحداث تقع حول الوقت الحاضر و ليس بالضرورة الان

- We are taking exams these days. -I'm reading a story .

3-To express future arrangements: يعبر عن حدث في المستقبل كامل الترتيبات

- Our aunt is leaving hospital tomorrow morning. -They are travelling on Monday.

يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع كلمات زمنية مثل:

Now- at the moment - at present - stillما زال - Look ! - Listen ! - Watch out! انتبه.....etc.

- لاحظ : لا يستخدم المضارع المستمر مع افعال الحواس و التفكير و العاطفة و التملك مثل:

Astonish	يدهش	Hate	يكره	Need	يحتاج	See	يرى
Believe	يصدق	Hear	يسمع	Owe	يدين	Seem	يبدو
Belong	يخص	Know	يعرف	Own	يمتلك	Smell	يشم
Concern	يهم/يتعلق بـ	Lack	ينقص	Possess	يمتلك	Suppose	يفترض
Consist	يتكون	Like	يحب	Prefer	يفضل	Surprise	يفاجئ
Contain	يحوي	Love	يحب	Realize	يدرك	Taste	يتذوق
Depend	يعتمد	Matter	يهم	Recognize	يتعرف على	Understand	يفهم
Deserve	يستحق	mean	يعني	Remember	يتذكر	Want	يريد

- لا يستخدم الفعل (have) بمعنى "يملك" في المضارع المستمر :

- I have a shower . لدي دش . - I'm having a shower . انني آخذ دشا .

- لا يستخدم الفعل (be) كفعل أساسي في المضارع المستمر ويستخدم بدلا منه المضارع البسيط :

- He is being at school. (x) - He is at school. (✓)

3- The present perfect tense

Form Subj. الفاعل + have/has + P.P.

- تستخدم has مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب (He/she/it):

- I have tidied my bedroom. -Ali (He) has played tennis for an hour.

Negation Subject + hasn't / haven't + p.p.+.....

- They haven't watched the match yet. -The student hasn't done his homework yet.

Yes / No Q Have /Has + Subj. الفاعل + + P.P. ?

- Have you tidied your room? - Yes, I have (tidied my room).
- Has the student done his homework? - No, he hasn't (done his homework yet).

Wh-' Q. Q.W. اداة استفهام + have/has+ subject+ P.P.....?

- Where have you played the match? -How long have you stayed here?

Passive Obj المفعول + have / has+ been + p.p.

- I have tidied my bedroom. - My room has been tidied (by me).
-Ali (He) has played tennis for an hour. - Tennis has been played for an hour.

الاستخدامات Uses

1- يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وأثره مازال موجود .

- She has cleaned the kitchen. (The kitchen is clean now)
- He has broken his leg. (He can't walk easily)

2- حدث انتهى في وقت غير محدد في الماضي :

- She has polished her shoes. - He has fed the sheep.

- لكن عند تحديد وقت الحدث نستخدم الماضي البسيط:

- She cleaned the kitchen yesterday. - He fed the sheep in the afternoon.

3- يدل المضارع التام علي حدث متكرر(أي أن ذلك الحدث قابل للحدث مرة أخرى) :

-Abu Terika has scored a hundred goals. (He can score more)

- لكن إذا استخدمنا الماضي البسيط مع حدث متكرر فمعني ذلك أن الحدث توقف:.

- He wrote 46 novels. (He stopped writing)

4- يعبر المضارع التام عن أحداث تمت حديثا.

- I've just finished reading this book.

5- يعبر المضارع التام عن أحداث لم تحدث بعد.

- She's never played tennis.

6- يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن خبرات سابقة دون تحديد وقت حدوثها .

- Have you ever met anyone famous?

- She's never met anyone famous yet, but she hopes to one day.

7- نستخدم (has /have been to) بمعنى ذهب لمكان وعاد أما (has /have gone to) ذهب لمكان وما زال هناك (لم يعد)

- My sister has gone to school. (She is still at school now.)

- My sister has been to the cinema. (She isn't there now).

- يستخدم المضارع التام مع الكلمات الآتية:

Just/already/yet/so far/ever/never/lately/recently/since/for / so far /up till now

- He has typed five letters so far.

- كما يستخدم المضارع التام إذا وجدنا الجملة بما يلي :

- It's/This is the first (second...) time...

- It's the first time I have been to this place.

- It's (This) is the only...

- This is the only play I have seen.

- In the last few years/months.....

- Egypt has changed a lot in the last few years.

- In recent years

- It has not rained in the Western Desert in recent years.

- Over the ages / over the years....

- The earth has become more crowded over the ages.

ملاحظات:

1 - لاحظ أن ever/never/just/ already تأتي بين have/has والتصريف الثالث PP. :

- I have just written the letter.

- He has never done karate.

2 - يأتي بعد since زمن يحدد بداية الحدث أما for يأتي بعدها مدة هذا الحدث.

Since		For	
Since	ساعة 12 o'clock	For	a moment
	اسم شهر October		two seconds / three minutes
	اسم يوم Friday		four hours / five days
	اسم فصل summer		six nights / seven weeks
	تاريخ يوم 7th August		eight months/ one season
	تاريخ سنة 2000		nine years
	جملة ماضي بسيط I arrived		ages
	Then /yesterday ذلك الحين		a long time
	last		the last

- We have owned this house since 1988

- He has known the same friends for three years.

- كما يأتي بعد since أيضا اسم يدل علي وقت معلوم مثل :

- lunch / lunchtime / his childhood / her wedding / their arrival.....

- She has stayed her since her marriage.

- He has known the same friends since his childhood.

3 - الجملة التي تأتي بعد since تكون ماضي بسيط:

- I haven't seen him since he left for Cairo.

4- تستخدم (ever) غالبا في السؤال بينما تستخدم (never) للنفي القاطع:

- Have you ever met the manager in person? - I have never seen such a strange person.
- Nothing like this has ever happened to us. - No student has ever answered this question.
- يمكن استخدام ever في الجمل التي تتضمن صيغة تفضيل:

→ + subject+ have/has+ ever +P.P. صفة تفضيل

- This is the strangest match I have ever watched.
- The most exciting novel I have ever seen was "Oliver Twist".
- لاحظ أنه عند استخدام never بدلا من ever نستخدم: such (a/an) adj. + n.
- This is the worst luck I have ever had. = I have never had such bad luck.
- في حالة استخدام ever في جملة بها before / never نبدأ بـ This is the first time
- I have never seen a lion before. = - This is the first time I have ever seen a lion.

5 - تستخدم yet في نهاية الأسئلة و الجمل المنفية.

- Has he arrived yet? - They haven't eaten yet.
- تستخدم yet في نفي جملة بها just / already
- He has just arrived. - He hasn't arrived yet.
- في حالة استخدام yet بدلا من still نستخدم مضارع تام منفى بدلا من المضارع المستمر:
- He is still writing the report. = - He hasn't finished writing the report

6 - نستخدم already في الأسئلة و الجمل المثبتة.

- Have you already written to John? - He has already had dinner.
- عند استخدام before now مكان already يحول زمن الجملة للماضي البسيط
- He has already finished. = - He finished before now.

7 - عند استخدام since / for بدلا من the last time / last / when / ago نحول الماضي البسيط إلى مضارع تام منفى.

- I last ate fish when I was in Alex. = - I haven't eaten fish since I was in Alex.

8 - إذا كانت الجملة مضارع تام منفى و بدأنا بـ It's نستخدم التركيب التالي

- It's + ماضى بسيط مثبت + last + فاعل + since + مدة زمنية
- I haven't seen him for ages. = - It's ages since I last saw him.

9- تستخدم (just) غالبا في الاثبات و السؤال:

- What has he just said ? -She has just turned on the computer.
- إذا استخدمنا just بدلا من a moment ago / a short time ago نحول الماضي البسيط إلى مضارع تام مثبت.
- The train left a moment ago. = - The train has just left.

10- عند استخدام ago بدلا من since / for نحول المضارع التام المثبت الى

- began / started + to + inf.
- It has rained for two hours. = - It began to rain two hours ago.
- لاحظ أنه يمكن استخدام ago مع since :
- I haven't seen him since three years ago.

11 - تستخدم كل من (recently/lately) بنفس الطريقة في السؤال :

- Has Barakat scored goals lately/recently?
- يفضل استخدام (recently) في الاثبات و (lately) في النفي :
- She has moved to a new house recently. -He hasn't phoned me lately.

→ The last time+جملة ماضى بسيط+was in/ when

→ =فاعل+ last..... in/when.....

→ = فاعل+ haven't/hasn't + P.P. since.....

-The last time I saw Ali was in 2009. =I last saw Ali in 2009. =I haven't played football since 2009.

- إذا كان التحويل من (for) الي (since) صعب (اي انة لو كانت المدة لا يمكن تحويلها الي تاريخ) نستخدم التركيبة نستخدم الطريقة التالية:

ماضى بسيط since مدة (is - was - has been) It

- He hasn't travelled for ages. (since) - It is ages since he travelled.

He hasn't studied for along time. (since) - It is along time since he studied.

Conjugation of Verbs تصريفات الافعال

Regular Verbs الافعال المنتظمة

- 1- بصفة عامة يتم تصريف الافعال المنتظمة باضافة (ed) لنهاية مصدر الفعل:
 - 2- اذا انتهى المصدر بحرف (e) لا ينطق يضاف له حرف (d) فقط :
 - 3- اذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن واحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد و كان الفعل يتكون من مقطع واحد او اكثر بشرط أن يكون المقطع الاخير قويا في النطق (stressed) فانه يضاعف الحرف الاخير قبل اضافة (ed) :
 - 4 - اذا انتهى الفعل بالحرف (y) فانه يتحول الي (ie) قبل اضافة (ed):
 - 5- اذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (c) يضاف بعده حرف (k) قبل اضافة (ed) :
- visit/ visited - watch/watched - land / landed
- like /liked - change / changed - bake / baked
- stop / stopped - travel / travelled - ban / banned
- study / studied - dry / dried - try / tried
- panic → panicked - picnic → picnicked

Irregular Verbs الافعال الغير المنتظمة

- الافعال الغير منتظمة لا توجد لها قواعد للتصريف و يجب ان تحفظ ، و يمكن تقسيمها الي ثلاثة انواع :

-أفعال تصريفاتها الثلاثة واحدة مثل :

infinitive	Past simple	Past Participle (P.P.)
put	put	put
shut	shut	shut
hit	hit	hit
let	let	let

-أفعال ذات تغير واحد مثل :

buy	bought	bought
think	thought	thought
build	built	built
sleep	slept	slept
hear	heard	heard

-أفعال تصريفاتها الثلاثة مختلفة مثل :

drink	drank	drunk
swim	swam	swum
write	wrote	written
speak	spoke	spoken

4-The past simple tense

Form → Subj. الفاعل + S.C. التصريف الثاني للفعل

-He visited his friends. -They watched a film.

Negation → Subject + didn't + inf.....

-They didn't watch the match yesterday. -The student didn't do his homework.

Yes / No Q. → Did + Subj. الفاعل + + inf. ?

- Did you tidy your room? - Yes, I did. - Yes, I tidied my room.
- Did the student do his homework? - No, he didn't (do his homework).

Wh-' Q. → Q.W. + did / didn't+ subject+ inf.....?

- Where did you watch the match? -Why didn't you stay at a hotel?

Passive → Obj المفعول + was / were + p.p.

-They watched a film. - A film was watched (by them).

الاستخدامات Uses

1 - يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث انتهى في الماضي

-I studied French when I was in secondary school.

2- يعبر عن عادة في الماضي

-Aya used to play tennis, when she was young.

3 - وصف أحداث في سرد قصة

-Ali found a bag ,then he went to the police station.

4 - في الحالة الثانية من اسلوب الشرط (If)

-If he helped us, we would win.

5 - يستخدم مع التعبيرات الآتية ويعتبر ماضي غير حقيقي يعبر عن المفترض و ليس الواقع :

1 - I wish +subj. ماضى بسيط + فاعل

- I wish mum wasn't ill.

- I wish the Egyptian team played well.

2-It's time +subj. ماضى بسيط + فاعل

-It's time he paid the bill.

- It is time father arrived.

2-I 'd rather +subj. ماضى بسيط + فاعل

-I would rather she helped him.

- I'd rather Ali didn't come.

6 - يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع التعبيرات الآتية :

Yesterday - ago - last - once - in the pastetc.

- Last week, I went to Alexandria. - Two months ago, we flew to London.

5-The Past Continuous Tense

- تتكون جملة الماضي المستمر المبني للمعلوم من: -

Form Subj. فاعل + was / were + V. ing.....

- Ali (he) was reading a story.

- Aya and Heba (They) were cooking lunch.

Negative Subj. فاعل + was not(wasn't)/ were not(weren't)+ V. ing .

- Ali (he) was not (wasn't) reading a story.

-I was not (wasn't) running fast.

- Aya and Heba (They) were not (weren't) cooking lunch.

Yes / No Q. Was / Were + Subj. فاعل + V. ing..... ?

- Was Ali (he) reading a story? - Yes, he was (reading a story).

- Were you running fast? - No, I was not. = No, I was not running fast.

Wh-' Q Q.W. اداة استفهام + was / were + Subj. فاعل + V. ing.... ?

- What was Ali doing (reading)?

- Who was running fast?

Passive Obj المفعول + was / were + being + p.p.

- A story was being read by Ali.

الاستخدامات Uses

- للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمر أثناء وقت معين في الماضي :

-Between six and half past six this morning, I was having breakfast.

- للتعبير عن حدث مستمر في الماضي قطعه حدث آخر :

-I was having a shower when the phone rang.

- يأتي في سياق قصة أو موقف في الماضي :

-I was studying Chemistry when I met Jane.

-He was doing research when they arrested him.

- يستخدم الماضي المستمر غالبا مع كلمات مثل (While / when / As / Just as) للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي قطعه حدث آخر :

(While / when / As / Just as) + past con. + , + past simple

-I was having a shower when the phone rang.

- While she was walking in the street, she met one of her old friends.

- It started to rain as we were doing the homework.

- لاحظ أن when يمكن أن يأتي بعدها ماضي بسيط :

-We were doing the homework when it started to rain.

يمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع **when** في الماضي البسيط إذا كانا متتابعين و لم يقطع احدهما الآخر :

-When he arrived, he found the door locked.

- يمكن استخدام **On** بدلا من **when** و يأتي بعدها **V. ing** :

= On arriving, he found the door locked.

- يستخدم الماضي المستمر غالبا مع كلمات مثل (**While / when / As / Just as**) للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي:

(**While / when / As / Just as**) + past con. + , + past con.

-While I was studying, my father was reading.

- إذا لم يأتي بعد **while** فاعل يأتي بعدها (**v. ing**)

-While playing, I fell down.

- يمكن استخدام **during** بدلا من **while** و يأتي بعدها **noun / V. ing** :

-While he was playing the game, he got hurt.

- During the game, he got hurt. = - He got hurt during the game.

- الفعل بعد **and** يأخذ نفس شكل الفعل الذي يسبقها:

-He was writing a letter and listening to some music.

- لاحظ عدم استخدام (**be**) في الماضي المستمر:

- While I was at school, I felt a headache.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer :

1. What exams you passed?
a. are b. did c. have d. might
2. After I finished school, I tourism at university.
a. study b. am studying c. have studied d. studied
3. Has Sara for any jobs yet?
a. applying b. applied c. apply d. application
4. Mona at Ain Shams Hospital on Thursdays and Fridays.
a. is working b. works c. has worked d. have worked
5. The university is for a qualified doctor at the moment.
a. advertisement b. advertised c. advertises d. advertising
6. While I for work I saw an advertisement for my dream job!
a. was looking b. looked c. have looked d. looks
7. People work when they are older for many reasons.
a. continued b. continue to c. continuing to d. have continued to
8. I working with my company but now I want to look for another job.
a. enjoyed b. enjoying c. have enjoyed d. enjoyed to
9. People should work in their 70s or 80s?
a. Are you thinking b. You are thinking c. Do you thinking d. Do you think
10. He was the first one at work .
a. arrives b. arrived c. to arrive d. would arrive
11. The students are about what they are learning at school .
a. proud b. excited c. pleased d. interested
12. He isresearch into the effects of insecticides .
a. getting b. doing c. making d. playing
13. My son was a prize for his good work at school.
a. got b. won c. awarded d. taken
14. His family was of his success at school.
a. proud b. happy c. pleased d. excited
15. That famous singer two concerts last month .
a. made b. devised c. gave d. did
16. They discussed the matter before the decision .
a. making b. devising c. taking d. giving
17. Although he was still young he part in many sports competitions and won medals .
a. got b. gave c. took d. make
18. The farmers a new way of collecting their crops .
a. spent b. devised c. made d. gave
19. We met on several last year .
a. happenings b. accidents c. incidents d. occasions

20. My father said to me , "Your teacher has some good advise you."
a. for b. to c. with d. on
21. Dr Hawass sometimes in the 'magazine "Egypt Today".
a. writes b. will write c. write d. has written
22. Who with when you visited the- museum yesterday?
a. did you go b. do you go c. you went d. have you gone
23. You must take your umbrella. Itoutside.
a. is raining b. rains c. rained d. should have rained
24. I haven't seen Mr. John.....
a. long time b. recently c. sometimes d. lately
25. The gardener hasn't put water on the garden a long time.
a. since b. ago c. for d. still
26. A long time has passed I saw him.
a) as long as b) because c) since d) until
27. I a book when somebody knocked on the door.
a) read b) has read c) am reading d) was reading
28. We our old friends for a year. They are too busy.
a) haven't been met b) hadn't met c) didn't meet d) haven't met
29. people should work in their 70s or 80s?
a) Are you thinking b) You are thinking c) Do you thinking d) Do you think
30. At the moment, I research on a computer program for an Australian company.
a) do b) am doing c) have done d) was doing.
31. I to be a doctor since I was ten.
a) wanted b) was wanting c) have wanted d) want
32. When I was eight, I a program about a famous Egyptian doctor on television.
a) saw b) have seen c) was seeing d) was seen
33. We a card for my brother. Do you want to help?
a) make b) are making c) were making d) had made
34. We a meeting at work this morning when suddenly all the lights went out.
a) having b) had had c) have had d) were having
35. At the moment she to be a primary school teacher.
a) trains b) was training c) is training d) has trained
36. Since I started the job two years ago, I important people from all over the world.
a) have wanted b) had wanted c) wanted d) wanting
37. Heba at a large tour company as an accountant.
a) work b) works c) working d) to work
38. I my homework while my brother was watching television.
a) doing b) have done c) was doing d) had done
39. It often rain in Egypt.
a) doesn't b) isn't c) won't d) wasn't
40. I first my best friend when we were both about 3 years old.
a) meet b) have met c) met d) meeting
41. What at 3 o'clock yesterday?
a) were you done b) were you doing c) you were doing d) do you do
42. My mother was cooking dinner when I home.
a) had arrived b) was arriving c) have arrived d) arrived
43. My uncle to Germany lately.
a) is b) will be c) has been d) is being
44. You look pale. to you?
a) Has anything happened b) Will anything happen
c) Had anything happened d) Was anything happening
45. I said "Hello" to my uncle, but he couldn't hear me because he to the radio.
a) has listened b) was listening c) is listening d) would listen

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- At the moment my sister trains to be a primary teacher.
- At the moment, we do a history project at school. It be very interesting.
- Before she did research on new treatments, she works as a surgeon.

4. Have you never met my brother?
5. He has studied accountancy since five years.
6. He has worked in a bank since 15 years.
7. He hasn't been in this country since the last two years.
8. He have not yet decided what to study at university.
9. He isn't finishing the job yet.
10. I am teaching in this school since 1995.
11. I didn't see the film yet.
12. I didn't study English for 2 days.
13. I fell asleep while I watched a film on television.
14. I have worked in a bank ever for I left school.
15. I haven't saw him since last Tuesday.
16. I know him for 5 years.
17. I last played football since I was on holiday.
18. I only buy my new camera last week.
19. I start to learn English when I was 4 years old.
20. I want to be a doctor since I was ten.
21. I was play tennis at three o'clock yesterday afternoon.
22. I'm not decorating my room yet.
23. It usually is hot and sunny in Egypt.
24. It's ages since I have last gone to a football match.
25. It's three weeks since I last visiting my grandfather.
26. It's time he comes to school.
27. I've already taking 300 photos with my new camera.
28. Metals are expanding when they are heated.
29. My brother has a difficult decision to do next week.
30. My brother has been in London for 1998.
31. My company has an important meeting last month.
32. My father work in a bank in the city centre.
33. My father work in a bank in the city centre. He work there for fifteen years.
34. On scored a goal, he fell down.
35. She does research on plants a few years ago.
36. She have had a number of jobs since leaving university.
37. The last time I have visited the pyramids was in 1995.
38. They didn't helped the old man.
39. What did you do since the weekend?
40. What have you do since the weekend?
41. When did you first met your friend?
42. When I was eight. I have seen a programme about a famous doctor on TV.
43. When would you start to learn English? – Two years ago.
44. While he does his homework, his friend arrived.

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

One of the current reform programmes is to stimulate invest in the industrial sector. The declared aim of the government in it; is to increase the share of the private sector to 25 per cent of the investment expenditure.

.....

.....

Great efforts are exerted to develop the industry of information technology in Egypt as it is the language which the world is communicating with at present and for long years to come . The government has encouraged it by reducing taxes and eliminating restrictions on imports .

.....

.....

Translate into English:

- الجمعيات الخيرية هامة جداً لأن لدينا العديد من المشاكل

.....

.....

Test 1

A. Language Functions

Respond to each of the following situations:

1. Someone asks you about the reason why you chose to be a doctor.
2. One of your friends is getting too fat. He's asking for your advice.
3. Your uncle Hesham suggests going to the Egyptian Museum and you agree.
4. You ask your father about the ideal way in paying today.

Say where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

- 1- A: My key , please. It's one twenty. Is there any message for me? B: No, sir.
A: If someone asks for me, I'll be in the hotel lobby.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 2- A: May I see the menu, please? B: Of course! Here you are.
A: Please bring me lamb , with rice and green salad.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

B. Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Our company is planning to send to the next international meeting.
a) a group b) a worker c) a delegation d) a car
2. Mrs Smith was very happy to become when her daughter had a baby son.
a) a surgeon b) a grandmother c) a father d) a cousin
3. The old doctor is looking forward to his at 65 years because he will no longer have to work.
a) retirement b) holiday c) year d) society
4. The boy needs because his heart is not working properly and without a new heart he will die.
a) a doctor b) a charity c) a transplant d) a hospital
5. It's terribly hot in here. Please can you turn on the?
a) heater b) air conditioning c) lights d) parts
6. That boy loves to draw buildings! I believe that he will become when he grows up.
a) an engineer b) a businessman c) an architect d) an artist
7. are important because they work on many things, from bridges and waterways to road systems.
a) Civil engineers b) Architects c) Designers d) Managers
8. When I was at school I liked my It was red and grey and I loved wearing it.
a) teachers b) uniform c) classroom d) shoes
9. What exams you passed?
a) are b) did c) have d) might
10. After I finished school, I tourism at university.
a) study b) am studying c) have studied d) studied
11. Has Sara for any jobs yet?
a) applied b) applying c) application d) apply
12. Mona at Ain Shams Hospital on Thursdays and Fridays.
a) is working b) works c) have worked d) has worked
13. The university is for a qualified doctor at the moment.
a) advertisement b) advertised c) advertises d) advertising
14. While I for work I saw an advertisement for my dream job.
a) was looking b) looked c) have looked d) looks

15. People work when they are older for many reasons.
 a) continued b) have continued to c) continuing to d) continue to
16. I working with my company but now I want to look for another job.
 a) enjoyed b) enjoying c) have enjoyed d) enjoyed to

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

- 1- Since she tired from the company, she has done voluntary work for a charity.
- 2- I'm not blaming you. We all do mistakes.
- 3- You will never get a good job if you don't have any qualifies.
- 4- He was been a police officer since his twenty first birthday.
- 5- While she was read a magazine, someone knocked at the door.
- 6- I didn't finish the report yet.

C. Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

No one dreamed of what is happening today. Who can believe that we can talk together, hear and see each other through wires? The revolution of technology included all fields not communications only. For example the mobile phone, it is not only a mean of communication but it is also considered a mean of entertainment. We call, listen to music and songs, watch videos, connect the internet and take photos as beautiful memories. In brief if you bought a modern mobile today, you really bought a recorder, TV, radio, camera and small computer.

Another example is in medicine. The usage of x-ray. It is an important invention which helps doctors to see and diagnose diseases inside our bodies. In spite of this highly progress in all fields of life which made our life easier, there are a lot of diseases which have no treatment yet. This is may be good because it always reminds us that there is God who is able to cure every disease.

a) Give short answers to the following questions:

1. From the passage give two examples to means of progress.
2. In the writer's point of view why it is not bad to find diseases which can't be treated nowadays?
3. What is the importance of x-ray?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mobile phone today have
 a) camera b) recorder c) small computer d) all of that
2. The underlined "revolution" means
 a) change b) pollution c) fight d) war

6-Read the following passage, and then answer the questions:

Many people today believe that getting a well-paid job is essential while finishing school or university is not. I strongly disagree with this view for many reasons.

First, education is the key to development. Doctors, scientists and teachers use their education to advance society. Without them, there would be no cures for diseases and no progress in technology. What is more, a good education can help to achieve economic success. Businesses would not be successful without educated people to run them. Success and financial reward go hand in hand. As a result, highly trained people are often also better paid people.

Of course, there are people who argue that an education is not necessary in order to make lots of money. It is true that some highly paid jobs do not require a high level of education, but they are rare.

I believe that although money is important in life, it should not be given more emphasis than education.

a) Give short answers to the following questions:

1. Why is education important in the field of medicine?
2. What does a person need to get a well paid job?
3. According to the writer, which is more important: money or education? Why?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Education is to development.
 a) necessary b) unnecessary c) easy d) unimportant
5. According to the text, business needs people to be successful.
 a) illiterate b) educated c) ignorant d) lazy

D. The Novel

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- What profession was Lemuel Gulliver trained in? What other subjects did he study?
- 2- Why did the Lilliputians fasten Gulliver to the ground when they found him?

3 - Why did they have to use so many ropes?

4- Gulliver was able to break the ropes on his left hand. Why do you think he didn't break the rest of his ropes and get free of the tiny people?

b) Read the quotation and answer the questions:

"Who are you? Can you tell me where I am? What do you want?"

1- Who said this to whom?

2- What happened just before he said this?

3- What happened after he said this?

c) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1- Gulliver could hear wood being cut next to him. He guessed that they were destroying something.

2- Gulliver picked up the six people one at a time and put five of them in his socks.

E. Writing

Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

"Citizenship and National Unity"

F. Translation

a) Translate into Arabic:

Childhood is the most important stage in man's life. So, due care should be directed to it. Scientific researchers have proved that early experiences of childhood form the essentials of man's character along life.

.....
.....

b) Translate into English:

نتطلع إلي الوقت الذي يسود فيه السلام.

هل لك أن تتخيل الحياة في غياب التكنولوجيا الحديثة

.....

Unit 2 - Gulliver's Travels

adventures	مغامرات	fight	يحارب	properly	بطريقة مناسبة
agree	يوافق	Fighter	محارب	prove	يثبت
an overall view	نظرة شاملة	foreigner	أجنبي	publish	ينشر
appear	يظهر	get over	يتغلب	quotation	فقرة
argue	يجادل - يناقش	giant	عملاق	regular	منتظم
argument	جدال - نقاش	ground	الأرض	represent	يمثل
as well as	أيضا	idiom	مصطلح	reward	مكافأة
asleep	نائم	imagination	خيال	ridiculous	سخيف
author	مؤلف - كاتب	imaginative	خيالي	sail	يبحر
beat	يهزم	imagine	يتخيل	sailing	إبحار
brain	مخ	in addition	بالإضافة إلى	sailor	بحار
capture	يأسر	island	جزيرة	science fiction	خيال علمي
character	شخصية	job	وظيفة	shipwrecked	حطام سفينة
comment	يلق	laugh at	يسخر من	speed	سرعة
commentary	تعليق	likely	إحتمال	steal	يسرق
communicate	يتصل	list	قائمة	storm	عاصفة
communication	إتصال	long-term	طويل الأجل	stranger	غريب
details	تفاصيل	luck	حظ	succeed	ينجح
die	يموت	luckily	لحسن الحظ	success	نجاح
diplomat	دبلوماسي	make fun of	يسخر من	successful	ناجح
disappear	يختفي	mind	عقل	suffer	يعانى
dwarf	قزم	negative	سلبي	symbol	رمز
earth	الأرض	neighbouring	مجاور	symbolize	يرمز إلى
enemy	عدو	opinion	رأي	tasks	مهام
escape	يهرب	partner	شريك	tie	يربط
excited	مثار	plough	يحرث	unfamiliar	غير مألوف
exciting	مثير	politician	سياسي	update	يحدث
explanation	شرح - تفسير	politics	سياسة	useful for	مفيد
favourite	مفضل	proper	مناسب	voyage	رحلة بحرية

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
Comment	يلق	comment	تعليق		
		commentary	تعليق علي حدث		
		commentator	معلق		
Imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	Imaginary	خيالي / غير حقيقي
				Imaginative	واسع الخيال
		neighbour	جار	neighbourly	طيب / عطوف
		neighbourhood	الجيرة/الجوار	Neighbouring	مجاور
		neighbourliness	ود		
		Diplomat	شخص دبلوماسي	diplomatic	دبلوماسي
		diplomacy	الدبلوماسية		
Ridicule	يهزأ / يحقر	Ridicule	سخافة/استهزاء	Ridiculous	سخيف
		Ridiculousness	سحف		
Retire	يتقاعد/ يعتزل/يحال الي المعاش	Retirement	تقاعد / اعتزال	Retired	متقاعد
Represent	يمثل/ينوب عن	Representation	تمثيل	Representative	تمثيلي
		representative	ممثّل/نائب		

Expressions

argue about	يجادل بشأن	find out about	يعرف عن
argue for	يدافع عن	frightened of	خائف من
at that time	في ذلك الوقت	laugh at	يسخر من
available for	متوافر لـ	on the island	على الجزيرة
commentary on	تعليق على	opinion on/about	رأي
connect to	يوصل بـ	pleased with	مسرور من
consist of	يتكون من	speak for	يتحدث بالنيابة عن
different from	مختلف عن	stop ... from	يمنع ..من
fall to the ground	يسقط على الأرض	tie ... to	يربط ..بـ
favourite of	مفضل لدي	upset about	منزعج أو متضايق بشأن
fight against	يقاتل ضد	work in politics	يعمل بالسياسة

Important Vocabulary

all over Egypt	في كل أنحاء مصر	make great progress	يحقق تقدما عظيما
carry out projects	ينفذ مشروعات	national income	الدخل القومي
does its best	تبذل ما بوسعها	raise the standard of living	يرفع مستوى المعيشة
great efforts	جهود عظيمة / جهود كبيرة	rights and duties	الحقوق و الواجبات
in all fields	في جميع المجالات	supply and demand	العرض و الطلب

Words & antonyms كلمات و عكسها

asleep	نائم	awake	مستيقظ
complete	كامل	incomplete	غير كامل
giant	عملاق	dwarf	قزم
imaginative	لديه قدرة على التخيل	unimaginative	غير قادر لي التخيل
meaningful	له مغزي / مهم	meaningless	غير مفيد / بلا مغزي
wide	واسع	narrow	ضيق

Definitions

commentary	- written opinions about and descriptions of a subject	تعليق
diplomat	- a person who is employed by a government to live in another country and to speak for the government	شخص دبلوماسي
explanation	- the reason why something happens	تفسير / مبرر
giant	- a very big person	عملاق
imaginative	- containing new and interesting ideas	مبدع / واسع الخيال
neighbouring	- near the place you are talking about	مجاور / قريب
politician	- a person who works in politics	شخص يعمل بالسياسة
publish	- print and make available for people to buy	ينشر / يطبع
ridiculous	- very silly	تافه / سخيف
steal	- take something that does not belong to you	يسرق
tie	-attach something with string or rope	يربط
voyage	- a long journey on a ship	رحلة بحرية

Language Notes

go for (a hike) يذهب في رحلة طويلة سيرا على الأقدام - We sometimes go for hikes on the beach.
Trip رحلة قصيرة - He went on a business trip to London.
picnic نزهة خلويه -They had a picnic on the river.

Journey رحلة طويلة
Voyage رحلة بحرية
Flight رحلة جوية
Tour جولة سياحية

-The journey to New York lasted for a long time.
 - I went on a voyage on my uncle's yacht.
 -The flight from Cairo to Aswan takes nearly an hour .
 -I took my friends on a tour around the village.

Sleep ينام
Sleepy يغالبه النوم - يشعر بالنعاس
Asleep نائم
Fast asleep مستغرق في النوم
Sleeping خاص بالنوم (صفة لغير العاقل)
Sleeping (نائم) صفة للعاقل

- Babies always sleep longer than old people.
 - She felt sleepy while she was waiting for the film.
 - He fell asleep on the chair.
 - He was fast asleep that he didn't hear the door bell.
 - We will travel on the four o'clock sleeping train .
 - Sleeping babies sometimes smile nicely.

do a Favour معروف / جميل
favourable مؤيد / مشجع / فى صالح
in favour of مؤيد لـ
favoured at /(with) موهوب بـ
Favourite مفضل- محبوب

- He did me a favour I will never forget.
 - The comments on his films are favourable.
 - Some people are in favour of old cars.
 - He is favoured at (with) squash.
 - What's your favourite subject ?

brain المخ (عضو بالجسم يتحكم فيه)
mind العقل (القدرة علي التفكير .. ليس له وجود مادي)
Mind يمانع/يبالي
Memory الذاكرة
Memories ذكريات
Remind يذكر
Remember يتذكر من تلقاء نفسه
remembering التذكر

-The brain controls all parts of the body.
 - I changed my mind and went for a walk.
 - I don't mind lending you my new camera.
 - My computer has 500GB hard disc memory
 - Our brains store past memories in two ways.
 - She reminds me of my sister.
 - I didn't remember to phone you.
 - I'm good at remembering faces.

agree to + inf. / n. يوافق
agree with (someone) يتفق مع
agree on (something) تتفق علي شيء
agree that + (sentence) (جملة)
accept (invitation / apology / condolences / bribes.....etc.

يقبل (دعوة / اعتذار / تعازي / رشوة)

-I accepted his invitation.

-He was accused of accepting bribes.

steal يسرق شيء
rob يسرق مكان
Rob(somebody) of something يسلب شيء من شخص

- The thief stole my new mobile phone.
 - A gang robbed the jewellery shop at nearly two o'clock.
 -He robbed the woman of her handbag.

win يفوز / يكسب (كأس/مباراة/انتخابات ...)
beat يهزم/يتغلب على (شخص أو فريق...)
gain يكتسب- يحصل على شيء معنوي مفيد (خبرة/معرفة معلومات/شهرة...)

- Egypt won the African Nations Cup seven times.
 - Egypt could beat Ghana in the final.

- I gained a lot of experience from my work with my uncle.
 وتشير ايضا الى زيادة في الوزن/السرعة/الكمية

-I gained a lot of weight during holiday.

- The plane gained speed to take off .

Earn يكسب (قوت أو رزق) مقابل عمل

- He earned more money than he had expected.

- I work hard to earn my living.

belong to يخص

-The red bike belongs to my brother. = My brother owns the red bike.

-لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية:

die يموت	died مات	dead ميت	deadly مميت / قاتل	death الموت
live على الهواء	alive على قيد الحياة	life حياة	lively نشيط / بهيج	living معيشة

stop + obj. + From +v. ing المفعول

- I try hard to stop Ali from driving so fast.

promise to + مصدر (يوعد) يعد

-He promised me to drive slowly.

Give a ring = phone يتصل تليفونيا

-She phoned me . = She gave me a ring.

Other + جمع -You should respect other people

- another+مفرد

- I need another cup of tea.

Listen to

يستمع أو يصغي بانتباه

-He listened to the news on the radio.

Hear

يسمع بدون قصد

- I didn't hear of(about)you for ages.

-She heard some noise outside.

Hear of / about يسمع عن شيء أو شخص

- I have never heard of this actor before.

hear from

يتلقى أخبارا من (خطاب أو رسالة أو مكالمة)

- Did you hear from your uncle?

- لاحظ استخدام الاسم بعد حرف الجر in وفي حالة عدم وجود حرف جر نستخدم الصفة:

- 3 metres in height

= 3 metres high

-The wall is three metres in height.

= - The wall is three metres high.

- 8 inches in length

=8 inches long

- The edge is sixteen inches in length.

= - The edge is sixteen inches long.

- 6 centimetres in depth

=6 centimetres deep

- The tank is fifty centimeters in depth.

= - The tank is fifty centimeters deep.

- None + فعل جمع

-Although I have lots of friends, none were able to help me.

- لاحظ استخدام take للزمن بمعنى يستغرق-

-It took him four hours to fix the car .

- لاحظ استخدام whose للسؤال عن الملكية

-Whose pen is that?

= Who does that pen belong to?

- as + adj. صفة + as = the same + n. اسم + as

- as big as = the same size as

- as old as = the same age as

- as long as = the same length as

- as strong as = the same strength as

- What + n. اسم = - How + adj. صفة

- How far ...? = What distance ...?

- How old ...? = What age...?

- How tall...? = What height...?

- How long...? = What length...?

- How high...? = What height...?

- How big / small...? = What size...?

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد بعد أسماء الكتب والنظم حتي لو كان الاسم يدل علي الجمع:

- Gulliver's Travels is an important novel.

- Windows is a computer operating system.

foreigner (أجنبي (شخص من دولة أخرى)

- He isn't from Egypt, he is a foreigner.

stranger (غريب (شخص لا أعرفه)

- He must be a stranger. He asked me where the hotel is.

Communication Skills

Requesting

Request	Response
- Could (Can) you + inf..... , please?	Agreeing:
- May / Could / Can I + inf. , please?	- Yes, of course. / Certainly.
- Would you + inf., please?	- It's a pleasure. / With pleasure.
- I'd be grateful if you could+ inf.	Refusing:
- I wonder if you could+ inf.	- I'm sorry. / I'm afraid I can't.
- I'd like....., please.	Agreeing:
- Would (Do) you mind + v. + ing.....?	- No, not at all. / No, of course not.
- Do you mind if I + inf.?	Refusing:
- Would you mind if I + ماضي بسيط +?	- Yes, I would (do). (

Thanking

Thanking	Response
- Thanks a lot. / Thank you	- Not at all.
- How thoughtful of you!	- Don't mention it.
- Thank you for.....	- You're welcome.
- That's very kind of you.	- It's a pleasure.

Exercises

Respond to each of the following situation:

1. Someone asks you about special qualities which the old enjoy better than the young.
2. Someone says that computer is very useful, you agree.
3. You are asked about the importance of charitable organisations.
4. You are asked about the normal age of retirement in Egypt.
5. Your friend agrees to help you. You are very pleased. What do you say?
6. Your friend asks you about the country where Swift was born.
7. Your friend bought a new DVD last week. You want to know if he or she has watched it. What do you say?
8. You want to know your friend's opinion of the DVD. What do you say?
9. You want to know if you can watch the DVD when he or she has watched it. What do you say?

where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

- 1- A: can I have two stamps , please ? B: Where to ? A: To the USA ..

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 2- A: Do you have anything on wild animals ?
B: On the second shelf, up there, but have you been registered? A: Yes , of course .

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 3- A: I've finished. What should I do now? B: Move to exercise B.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 4- A : How long can I keep this book, sir? B : Two weeks only.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

Choose the correct answer:

1. Ais a person who works in politics.
a- politician b- musician c- magician d- technician
2. She.....the people her story, but none of them believed it.
a- said b- said to c- told d- told to
3. are meeting to discuss relations between our two countries.
a- Accountants b- Dentists c- Clerks d- Diplomats
4. In Gulliver's Travels, Gulliver meets.....who are 18 meters tall.
a- Lilliputians b- giants c- adventures d- very small people
5. When I was a child, I couldn't think of interesting ideas, so my stories weren't
a- imaginative b- image c- imaginary d- imagination
6. 6- If you are....., this means the ship you're travelling in is destroyed at sea.
a- lost ship b- shipwrecked c- destroyed ship d- ship accident
7. I can't think of anfor the team playing so badly.

- a- interruption b- examination c- exploration d- explanation*
8. Gulliver's Travels is a famous novel whose.....was Irish.
a- author b- reader c- character d- play writer
9. Winston Churchill was a famous British
a- politician b- diplomat c- political d- policy
10. You shouldn't.....people who have different ideas from you.
a- speak about b- laugh c- make fun d- ridicule
11. Theof this book is unknown.
a- author b- reader c- lender d- publisher
12. The.....car is Ahmed's not mine.
a- steal. b- stealing c- stole d- stolen
13. A.....is a very big man.
a- fat b- Lilliputian c- giant d- politician
14. Jonathan Swift found work in Englanda secretary.
a- such as b- such c- as d- like
15. Please get me a string so that I can.....these things together.
a- attach b- capture c- connect d- control
16. You can do this job
a- later b- lately c- latter d- late
17. Some people think that Gulliver's Travels was the first science..... novel
a- imaginative b- fiction c- successful d- research
18. Can you tell me the reasonsyou've sold your car ?
a- for b- of c- why d- what
19. This is Moses. He works as a secretary to a famous Arab.....in Europe.
a- diplomatic b- diploma c- diplomacy d- diplomat
20. The prisoner managed toto Rome .
a- capture b- detain c- escape d- lose
21. A.....is a person who works in politics.
a- politic b- political c- politician d- policy
22. You can find the information you wantthe internet.
a- down b- out c- on d- in
23. Are you interested in ?
a- politic b- politician c- politics d- political
24. A/An is a long journey on a ship.
a- flight b- journey c- voyage d- tour
25. You shouldthat plant to the wall to stop it from falling over.
a- lie b- tie c- try d- dye
26. Don't..... at me, It is the first time for me to use the lift.
a- weep b- cry c- smile d- laugh
27. Jonathan Swift's mother was English, but his father was
a- French b- American c- Egyptian d- Irish
28. In England, Swift worked as a secretarya retired diplomat.
a- with b- to c- at d- for
29. A giant is a very.....person.
a- tall b- short c- big d- small
30. To findabout the author of this novel, just read this book.
a- on b- in c- out d- at
31. Do you have anfor what is happening?
a- idea b- information c- reason d- explanation
32. I ran fast , however Ithe train.
a- caught b- missed c- found d- got on
33. Something that is not yours does not.....to you.
a- own b- belong c- owe d- return
34. Some young men managed to tie the thief to the
a- sky b- ground c- roof d- cloud
35. The people of LilliputGulliver to the ground so as not to escape.
a- fell b- put c- prevented d- tied

36. We all should be aware of the aggressive attitudes of our.....
a- friends b- companions c- aliens d- enemies
37. We don't know the reason.....the police have arrested him.
a- for b- why c- of d- how
38. The captainhis ship safely past the rocks .
a- drove b- sailed c- flew d- cycled
39. As soon as the book was....., it was sold in great numbers.
a- written b- printed c- published d- appeared
40. She is very happy because her new book is a.....
a- success b- successor c- successful d- successive
41. Someone who is.....has already stopped working because of age.
a- retires b- retiring c- retired d- retirement
42. A is someone whose job is to represent his or her country abroad.
a- diplomat b- representative c- politician d- ambassador
43. Thank you for.....me your DVD.
a- lending b- watching c- borrowing d- seeing
44. The blue colour on the map.....water.
a- symbols b- refers c- represents d- appears
45. Egypt and Libya are.....countries.
a- next b- neighbouring c- beside d- cooperating
46. It is not a good thing to.....of people only because they are poor.
a- laugh b- ridicule c- make fun d- criticize
47. Something that's ridiculous is very.....
a- silly b- interesting c- funny d- imaginative
48. My uncle is a.....for an international oil company.
a- representative b- businessman c- discoverer d- responsible
49. He is not.....I'm afraid. Even his children are rude.
a- neighbour b- neighbouring c- neighbours d- neighbourly
50. A.....is written explanations and opinions about a subject.
a- description b- report c- commentary d- book

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. A carpenter represents one country in another.
2. Ahmed will look for another job to gain more money.
3. Ali used to playing tricks on his young brother.
4. Could you give me a quick exploration of how this machine works?
5. Don't make noise while the baby is sleep.
6. Gulliver helped the people of Lilliput to lose their enemies.
7. Gulliver's Travels were made into a film.
8. He was not laughing. He was making laugh of you.
9. I don't think there is a reason for you are so angry.
10. I don't agree on your opinion of punishing pupils physically at school.
11. I lost the key to my car. Lucky, I had a spare one.
12. I'm interested on finding more information about Swift.
13. Ireland was part of Britain. It no longer joins to it now.
14. It is forbid to wait here.
15. It is necessary for us to go back on foot last night.
16. It isn't yet available by people to buy.
17. It's wrong to ridicule from people because of their colour.
18. None of Swift's books were very successful as Gulliver's Travels.
19. Samy was very angry, someone robbed his wallet.
20. She didn't give an explanation to her refusal.
21. Swift was making funny of European politics.
22. The book you have borrowed me is so interesting.
23. The complimentary on the Olympic Games was much better on the other channel.
24. They chose a famous lawyer to present them in court.
25. They tied Gulliver to the ground to punish him from escaping.
26. This designer always comes up with new ideas. He is very imaginary.
27. When I grow up, I'd like to be a famous politics.

Grammar

روابط العطف 1- Linking Words Showing Addition

واو العطف and

- We went to the market and the zoo.
- Ahmed and Ali are friends.
- Our house is clean and tidy.
- She speaks quickly and clearly.
- They captured Gulliver and tied him to the ground.

بالإضافة الى Besides+ n. / v.ing

- Besides cooking for twenty people, she did the washing up.
- She did the washing up besides cooking for twenty people.

بالإضافة الى ذلك Besides that + جملة

- She cooked for twenty people, besides that she did the washing up.

بالإضافة الى In addition to + n. / v.ing

- In addition to going to the market, we went to the zoo.
- We went to the zoo in addition to going to the market.

بالإضافة الى ذلك In addition + جملة

- يمكن استخدام In addition في بداية ووسط ونهاية الجملة:

- In addition we went to the market, we went to the zoo.
- We went to the market. In addition, we went to the zoo.
- We went to the market. We went to the zoo In addition.

→ In addition = additionally-moreover- furthermore- likewise + جملة....

- In addition he does homework, he listens to music.
- She is a secretary. Additionally, she has got a bookshop.
- He studies engineering. Moreover, he joined a music school.
- Messi is gifted; furthermore he cares for his fitness.
- The region is beautiful. Likewise, the climate is excellent.

بالإضافة الى (الفاعل واحد في الجملتين) As well as + v. ng

- We went to the market. We went to the zoo.
 - As well as going to the market we went to the zoo.
- إذا استخدمت as well as في ربط جملتين يختلف فيهما الفاعل ، فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول يكون ترتيب الجملة كما يلي:

→ باقي الجملة + فاعل ثاني + as well as + فاعل أول

- I as well as Ali have a car.
 - Eman as well as her brothers likes fish.
- تربط as well as مفعولين أو صفتين مختلفين و توضع بين المفعولين أو الصفتين مع حذف الكلمات المتشابهة من الجملة الثانية:
- Hala plays the guitar. She plays the piano. = - Hala plays the guitar as well as the piano.
 - Rania is talented موهوبة. She is beautiful. = - Rania is talented as well as beautiful.

- لاحظ استخدام (too / also/ as well) بمعنى ايضا :

- I bought a camera. I bought a CD, too.
- = I bought a camera. I also bought a CD. = I bought a camera. I bought a CD as well.

- لاحظ استخدام (either) بمعنى ايضا في الجمل المنفية:

- I can't see Ali. I can't see his friends, either.

ليس فقط و لكن أيضا not only... but also

- تأتي not only قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد الفعل المساعد في الجملة الأولى.

→ (as well) (also) (فعل مساعد / ناقص + الفاعل + but+ ... فعل + not only+ فاعل)

- We went to the market. We went to the zoo.
- = We did not only go to the market but also we went to the zoo.
- = We not only went to the market but also we went to the zoo.
- = We not only went to the garden, but we went to the zoo as well.

- لا تستخدم (do- does- did) بعد الفاعل بين (but.... also) :

- She not only arrived late, but she also forgot her books.
- = She not only arrived late, but she forgot her books as well.

= She did not only arrive late, but she also forgot her books.

= She did not only arrive late, but also she forgot her books.

لاحظ : عند استخدام (Not only) في بداية الجملة يستخدم فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل :

→ Not Only + فعل مساعد + فاعل + فعل , but..... .

- We not only went to the market but also we went to the zoo.

- Not only did we go to the market, but also we went to the zoo.

إذا ربطت Not only.....but also فاعلين مختلفين فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني.

- Tom plays music. His brothers play music. = - Not only Tom but also his brothers play music.

كل من/ كلا / كلتا Both

- الفعل بعد (both) يكون جمعا:

-I want both books.

-Both shirts are good.

- قبل صفات الإشارة (this – these – that – those) يمكن استخدام (both / both of) :

- I want both (of) these books.

- يأتي بعد (both of) ضمير مفعول جمع (you – us – them) ويمكن استخدامه كفاعل أو كمفعول للجملة:

- Both of them are good. - She has invited both of us.

- يمكن استخدام (both) بعد ضمائر المفعول الجمع (you – us – them) :

- She has sent them both her greeting. - She has invited us both.

- عندما تشير (both) إلى فاعل الجملة فهي تأتي قبل الفعل الأصلي أو بعد الفعل المساعد/الناقص. و في حالة وجود أكثر من فعل مساعد فهي تأتي بعد الأول :

- We both want to go. = Both of us want to go.

- They have both gone home. = Both of them have gone home.

- We have both been invited. = Both of us have been invited.

- يفضل حذف (the) أو صفات الملكية (my-his-her-its-your-our-their) بعد (both) :

- You can take both shirts. (NOT...both the shirts.)

- He lost both parents when he was a child. (NOT ... both his parents...)

Both ... and ...

- She is both beautiful and clever. (Adjectives)

- She both sings and dances. (Verbs)

- Both Mr Ahmed and his wife are doctors. (Subjects)

- I love both mum and dad. (Objects)

لا..... ولا Neither ... nor

- تستخدم (neither... nor) للربط كما يلي :

- Neither the movie nor the play was good. (مفرد + مفرد singular)

- Neither we nor our sons carry mobile phones. (جمع + جمع plural)

- Neither smoking nor drinking is permitted in his house. (Gerund + gerund)

- The boys tried neither to clean nor to tidy their room. (Infinitive+ infinitive)

- إذا لم يكن هناك توافق بين الأسماء كما في الأمثلة السابقة فإن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأقرب له في الجملة:

- Neither the movie nor the plays were good. - Neither we nor our son carries a mobile phone.

- عند استخدام (Neither) في أول الجملة يتقدم الفعل المساعد/الناقص على الفاعل :

- I neither watched nor tried to watch the film. = Neither did I watch nor tried to watch the film.

- لاحظ استخدام (so / neither) :

فاعل / ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد / ناقص (مثبت) + و كذلك SO + جملة مثبتة

-I am late and so are you. - She has passed the test. So have her friends.

فاعل / ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد / ناقص (مثبت) + و لا neither + جملة منفية

- Ali can't swim, neither can I. - I don't like fish and neither does mum.

- لاحظ أن الفعل المساعد / الناقص يتبع الفاعل أو ضمير الفاعل الذي يليه

كل / أي من Either

- نستخدم (either of) قبل الضمائر أو صفات الإشارة أو أداة التعريف (the, this, my, your..... etc.) و يجب أن يكون الاسم أو الضمير بعدها جمعا:-

- There was a chair on either side of the fireplace.

- I don't like either of them. -I don't like either of my new neighbours.

- عادة يكون الفعل مفردا لكن الفعل الجمع يستخدم في اللغة الدارجة :

- Is either of them at home? (More formal)

- Are either of them at home? (More informal)

- يستخدم ضمير المفعول و ليس ضمير الفاعل بعد (either of):

- I don't like either of them. (NOT ... either of they.)

- الضمير الذي يعود علي (either + noun/pronoun) يمكن ان يكون مفردا او جمعا :

- If either of the boys comes, tell him/them to wait.

- لاحظ استخدام (either) بمعنى ايضا في الجمل المنفية:

- I don't like this one, and I don't like that one either. (= I dislike both of them.)

- Peter isn't here. John isn't here either. - I know you don't like me. I don't like you either.

اما... او... Either ...or

- تستخدم (Either ... or) للتعبير عن اختيار بين بدليين :

- He must be either a professor or an engineer.

- We must either go now or stay till the end.

- لاحظ ان (either) تستخدم قبل البديل الاول :

- I don't speak either German or French. - You can have either tea or coffee.

روابط السبب 2-Linking Words Showing Reason

→ جملة تعبر عن سبب + because / as / since / as long as + جملة تعبر عن نتيجة

→ جملة تعبر عن نتيجة + جملة تعبر عن سبب + Because/ As / Since / As long as

- I didn't ask her to help me because / as she was busy.

- As / Since she was busy, I didn't ask her to help me.

- As long as you are unfit, you won't join the team.

- لاحظ استخدام روابط السبب التالية (جميعها تأتي في بداية او وسط الجملة) :

- because of/ owing to/ due to/ as a result of / on account of/ through + n./ (v. ing) + جملة ...

- We lost the match. We played badly. = - We lost the match due to playing badly.

- We lost the match. We played badly. = - We lost the match through bad play.

- We didn't play the match. The weather was bad.

= We didn't play the match owing to bad weather.

- He went to the doctor's because he was ill.

= He went to the doctor's because of his illness. = He went to the doctor's because of being ill.

- يمكن استخدام thanks to بنفس الطريقة مع الاشياء الايجابية:

- Thanks to working hard, he became a millionaire.

- because of/ owing to/ due to/ thanks to

- as a result of / on account of/ through

+ the fact that + جملة نتيجة + جملة سبب

- He went to the doctor's because of being ill.

= - He went to the doctor's because of the fact that he was ill.

- Thanks to the fact that he had worked hard, he became a millionaire.

→ Being + (adj.) جملة + صفة

- Being ill, He went to the doctor's.

روابط النتيجة 3 - Linking Words Showing Result

→ So / thus / Hence/ Therefore / Consequently / As a consequence/ That is why / as a result / For this reason / Because of that + جملة نتيجة ...

- It was raining, so we didn't go out.

- He didn't have enough money, therefore he didn't buy the mobile.

- He didn't arrive early, as a result he missed the bus.

- Professor Brown is a famous scientist. Because of that, he is highly respected.

- He has been studying hard for a long time. Consequently, he has made considerable progress.

- because of/ owing to/ due to/ thanks to

- as a result of / on account of/ through

+ جملة سبب + جملة نتيجة + that

- We lost the match due to playing badly. = We played badly. Due to that, we lost the match.

→ The cause / The reason(why) + جملة نتيجة + be + that + جملة سبب

- The cause / The reason he didn't buy the mobile was that he didn't have enough money.
- The cause / The reason we didn't go out was that it was raining.

→ The cause of / The reason for + n. / v.ing... + be + that + جملة سبب

- The reason for his considerable progress is that he has been studying hard for a long time.
- The cause of (us)not going out was that it was raining.

4- Linking Words Showing Contrast روابط التناقض

- لاحظ ان الروابط التالية ياتي بعدها جملة :

but -yet -however-nevertheless - in/by contrast -on the contrary- instead - even so- on the other hand

- I like fish but I hate its smell. - Ibraheem is lazy. However, his sister is hard working.
- She studied hard for several months. Yet, she didn't come first.
- I like sugar in my coffee. In contrast Marwa likes black coffee.

Although - though –even though - even if –while - whereas - whatever+ جملة

- Ahmed never helps the poor whereas his parents are very kind.
- Although I like fish, I hate its smell. - He won't answer the question even if it is extremely easy.
- يمكن استخدام التصريف الثالث بعد although إذا كانت الجملة أصلا في المبني للمجهول مع حذف الفعل المساعد:
- Although the school was built two years ago, it is in bad condition.
- Although built two years ago, the school is in bad condition.

→ **However + فعل + فاعل + صفة أو (ظرف)**

- Although he was strong, he couldn't work. = However strong he was, he couldn't work.
- Although she wrote badly, she got high marks. = However badly she wrote, she got high marks.

→ **Whatever + فعل + فاعل + اسم**

- However strong he was, he couldn't work.
- = Whatever strength he had, he couldn't work.

→ **as / though + فعل + فاعل + صفة**

- However strong he was, he couldn't work. = Strong as / though he was he couldn't work.

Despite / In spite of/ Contrary to/ Regardless of/ unlike / instead of / In contrast to + V.ing / noun اسم

- Although he is strong, he can't work. = Despite his strength (being strong), he couldn't work.
- = Regardless of his strength (being strong), he couldn't work.

→ **Despite / In spite of / Regardless of + the fact that جملة كاملة + that أو**

- Despite the fact that he is strong, he can't work.
- = In spite of / Regardless of the fact that (that) he is strong, he can't work.

5- Linking Words Showing Purpose روابط الغرض

→ **To -so as to - in order to المصدر + inf.**

- We came to the countryside in order to find some peace and quietness.
- I'll go home so as to take some rest. - Fishermen go to the sea to catch fish.

→ **in order not to/ so as not to**

- Be careful when using a knife in order not to be injured.
- Carry the flowers carefully so as not to damage them.
- Fishermen go to the sea in the hope that they may catch fish.

→ **in the hope of + V + ing.....**

- I'll go home in the hope of taking some rest.
- The fishermen go to the sea in the hope of catching fish.

→ **جملة + (خشية ان lest)**

- Watch the baby, lest she falls down the stairs.
- She couldn't sleep all night lest she misses the six o'clock train.

Present/future مضارع/مستقبل

so that

can /will/ may /+ مصدر

+

in order that

+

Past جملة ماضي

in the hope that

could /would/might + مصدر

- I turned off the radio so that I could hear the nightingale.
- I'll go home so that I can take some rest.
- Fishermen go to the sea in the hope that they may catch fish.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer :

1. He says he likes sports. he only watches it on TV.
a) Despite b) Although c) As d) However
2. I fell asleep I was watching a long film.
a) although b) if c) while d) because
3. I like reading novels, I don't have time.
a) but b) if c) because d) although
4. my brother works very hard, he doesn't earn much money.
a) As b) Although c) So d) As soon as
5. you need to remember a date, write it in your diary.
a) If b) Although c) Unless d) Despite
6. He thought he would miss the train, it was late, so he caught it.
a) because b) because of c) although d) but
7. he ran as fast as he could, he was only third in the race.
a) If b) Although c) Unless d) Despite
8. they were having breakfast, the phone rang six times.
a) As b) Although c) while d) As soon as
9. I'd like to see the new film, none of my friends wants to go with me.
a) because b) because of c) although d) but
10. you don't like hot weather, don't come to Egypt in July.
a) If b) Although c) Unless d) Despite
11. I got home, I did my homework.
a) As b) Although c) while d) As soon as
12. She speaks English French.
a) as b) as well c) well d) and
13. Not only up late, but also he forgot his books.
a) he turned b) did he turn c) turned he d) turned
14. I went there I was a child.
a) when b) before c) as soon d) although
15. He managed to eat a big lunch having eaten an enormous breakfast.
a) because b) because of c) although d) despite
16. She walked home by herself she knew that it was dangerous.
a) because b) because of c) although d) despite
17. My brother is 170 cm and my sister is 150 cm. My brother is my sister.
a. taller b. as tall as c. taller than d. taller as
18. I am 155 cm and so is my friend. My friend is me.
a. as tall as b. taller than c. tall like d. as tall than
19. I can lend you some money. It's no problem at all.
a. Although b. If c. Of course d. As soon as
20. like reading a lot, I am not good at writing.
a. Although b. If c. More d. Because
21. We can go to play tennis weather is good.
a. in spite of b. although c. of course d. if
22. I wanted to go to school I was too sick to go.
a. while b. but c. if d. as soon as
23. Lemuel Gulliver was travelling at sea, there was a storm.
a. Although b. If c. Because d. While
24. I finished reading the book, I wanted to start reading it again from the beginning.
a. As soon as b. Because c. If d. While
25. No one was watching television, I switched it off.
a. to b. so that c. so d. in order that
26. You can't drive a car you've got a licence.
a. when b. if c. unless d. in case

27. there were video cameras in the supermarket, many things were stolen.
a. However b. Although c. Despite d. But
28. I missed the train getting up late.
a- owing to b- because c- although d- as
29. He bought a ticket..... he decided to travel to Alexandria.
a. because b. owing to c. due to d. though
30. his cleverness, he was unable to answer the question.
a. In spite of b. Although c. Even though d. However
31. The team won that match..... they got the cup.
a. Beside b. But c. In addition d. As well as
32. He will get a prize he wins the match.
a. unless b. if c. in case of d. although
33. We decided to go out for a meal..... it was raining.
a. however b. even though c. despite d. in spite of
34.he answered all the questions correctly, he got the full mark.
a. As b. Although c. However d. Despite
35. They were dismissedtheir bad manners.
a- because b- on account of c- despite d- although
36. Not only my brothers but also my sister.....going to Alexandria.
a. are b. is c. were d. have been
37. I, as well as my friend,..... to leave at once.
a. am b. is c. are d. were
38. He got a prize his hard work.
a. owing to b. because c. as d. since
39. playing football, we visited our uncle.
a. In addition to b. In addition c. Beside d. Moreover
40.his bravery , he could storm the enemy's camp.
a- Despite b- Owing to c- Although d- Because
41. his honesty, no one believed him.
a. Although b. However c. Despite d. In spite
42. It was hot,..... we went swimming .
a. so b. because c. since d. due to
43. People are still coming to this country..... there is an epidemic of flu.
a- although b- as c- despite d- because
44. Not only my colleagues but also my teacher..... to the party.
a. invited b. is invited c. are inviting d. is inviting
45. he was careless, he had an accident.
a. Due b. Because c. Because of d. Owing to
46. Ali, as well as I,..... going to camp in the desert .
a. am b. is c. are d. have
47. my help, he fell into debt.
a-However b-Although c-Despite d-As
48. He came late he got in .
a- although b- but c- despite d- whatever
49. Ramy didn't earn much last year he worked hard.
a- although b- however c- despite d- in spite of
50. I couldn't walk my leg was broken .
a- because of b- due to c- as d- owing to
51. He didn't go to school..... his illness.
a- because b- as c- because of d- being
52. very tired , I went to bed early last night.
a- Because b- Because of c- On account of d- Being
53. I knocked at the door, nobody answered.
a- Because b- Because c- Although d- Despite
54. He lost his job his good record .
a- in spite of b- although c- because d- so that
55. Hossam enjoyed the party ,he had to leave early.
a- because b- owing to c- however d- so that
56. She went into the town yesterdayshe wanted to do some shopping.
a- so as to b- in order that c- so that d- because
57.coming early, he was punished .
a- Despite of b- Although c- In spite d- Despite
58. Kamal won the competitionhe had had no previous experience.
a- so that b- although c- because d- despite
59. He was cautious, he fell into trouble.
a- because b- so that c- however d- despite
60. It was dark I could see.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| <i>a- in order that</i> | <i>b- despite</i> | <i>c- but</i> | <i>d- because</i> |
|-------------------------|-------------------|---------------|-------------------|
61. He was punished coming early.
a- because b- so as to c- although d- in spite of
62. courageous he was, he escaped.
a- Although b- However c- Despite d- Because
63. I like reading a lot. I'm not good at writing.
a. Although b. However c. Despite d. Because
64. Gulliver was traveling in the sea, there was a storm.
a. although b. If c. While d. Because

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. As soon as seeing the accident, I called the police.
2. As I've seen that film twice, I'd love to see it again.
3. As well as she studied hard, she played tennis regularly.
4. Because his cleverness, he got high marks.
5. Because the fact that the book is long, it's interesting.
6. Because they played very well, they lost the match.
7. Despite the weather was bad, I went out.
8. He didn't go out because his illness.
9. He had to apologize owing to he made a shameful mistake.
10. He has never played Karate even though he regular watches Karate on TV.
11. He scored the highest marks owing to he studied ten hours daily.
12. He study hard as he want his father to reward him
13. His most famous book was Gulliver's travels which were published in 1726.
14. However he doesn't like playing tennis, He doesn't mind watching TV.
15. However the box was heavy, he could carry it.
16. I like Gulliver's travels although Gulliver has exciting adventures.
17. I like most school subjects because I don't like physics.
18. I said "Good morning" when you didn't hear me.
19. I like all my school subjects, and not English.
20. However he is young, he is strong.
21. They were arrested as breaking the law.
22. He had to apologize owing to he made a shameful mistake.
23. As well as she studied hard, she played tennis regularly.
24. If he reads the questions carefully, he answers them.
25. There were no accidents though the dangerous roads.
26. I like most school subjects because I don't like physics.
27. As soon as seeing the accident, I called the police.
28. However the box was heavy, he could carry it.
29. In addition to he wrote the letter, he saw the film.
30. Because they played very well, they lost the match.
31. I was watching TV while I did my homework.
32. Unless I have time, I will come and see you tomorrow.
33. Gulliver escaped from the island however the king wanted to kill him.
34. If I want to find out about a famous writer, I would have gone to a library.
35. I've read it twice. Although, I haven't understood it.
36. If he read the question carefully, he will answer it correctly.
37. If he reads the questions carefully, he answers them.
38. In addition to he wrote the letter, he saw the film.
39. In spite of his poor, he is happy.
40. It is also very funny to reading about the small people of Lilliput.

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

Egyptians are proud of Magdi Yacoub. Thanks to his high qualifications , he has become the pioneer of heart transplant operations. Though he is in his 70s , he is still making great efforts for the sake of children with heart problems.

.....

.....

Most young people today are substandard in culture and knowledge .TV took them away from reading and attending lectures and symposia .The educational system doesn't develop the creative and intellectual faculties in them.

Translate into English:

لم يسبق لى زيارة أي بلد أجنبي في أوروبا أو أمريكا من قبل.

- يحافظ رجال الشرطة على حياتنا و أموالنا و يلقون القبض على المجرمين.

- يجب أن يكون لك هدف فى الحياة وأن تبذل قصارى جهدك لتحقيقه

- يجب أن تتمتع بعض الصفات المهمة مثل الشجاعة والتعاون.

Test 2

A. Language Functions

Respond to each of the following situations:

1. Your little brother asks your advice about how to keep fit.
2. You expect something bad will happen.
3. You ask for advice about how you can study English well.
4. You tell your parents about your wishes which you want to achieve in the future.

Say where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

1. A: Good morning, sir. When will the first plane to Italy take off?
B : It will take off after 2 hours. A : Thanks a lot.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

2. A: Take these pills 3 times a day. B: After or before meals?
A: Before meals surely they are useful for digestion.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

B. Vocabulary and Structure

Choose the correct answer:

1. the man was very sick, he didn't see the doctor.
a) As b) So c) Unless d) Although
2. As well as a writer, he was a politician.
a) be b) being c) is d) is being
3. I'm not very good at sports, I can swim very well.
a) despite b) however c) because d) whatever
4. The captain as well as the sailors responsible for what had happened.
a) was b) were c) have been d) are
5. He won't do any work for you you pay him.
a) if b) so c) unless d) as long as
6. He didn't expect to win, he was delighted when he got the gold medal.
a) so b) because c) as d) but
7. He didn't come to school he was ill.
a) because b) because of c) although d) but
8. We had to change the plans problems we hadn't expected.
a) because b) so c) as d) owing to
9. You should (lie – tie – try – dye) that plant to the wall to stop it from falling over.
10. Watch your bag! If you are not careful, someone might it.
a. jump b. hit c. steal d. want
11. I was not able to speak for myself, so I asked a lawyer to me.
a. watch b. represent c. interpret d. write

12. After 10 years in prison, the prisoner was able to when the guard forgot to take the keys out of his door.
a. escape b. celebrate c. represent d. walk
13. The boys were very unkind to the new student and they his big nose.
a. looked at b. talked about c. made fun of d. watched
14. The teacher decided to the bad student by making him stay in the classroom during the lunch break.
a. hurt b. talk to c. punish d. sing to
15. The crowd of people, who waited in the hot sun for hours without food and water, really
a. laughed b. suffered c. talked d. cried
16. I need some money. Can I some from you?
a. lend b. want c. borrow d. give

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

- 1- This is my friend which car was damaged in accident yesterday.
- 2- The party start at six o'clock.
- 3- Hurry up or we are going to be late.
- 4- Every one passed the test accept Ali.
- 5- My children are very ashamed in front of strangers.
- 6- He doesn't live here no longer.

C. Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

It was the most fantastic adventure I have ever done in my life when I went to the western south of Africa. It was that because I saw strange creatures I have never seen before in my life. I saw a lot of strange kinds of plants and trees also I saw wild animals and insects. I had my time watching these creatures and trying to find out the secrets which disappear inside these fabulous creatures. I thought how do they live? What do they eat and drink? How can they adapt with all kinds of life in this hard place. I was admired and excited of God, the greatest creator, who create every one, animal and thing in great wise. Thanks God.

a) Give short answers to the following questions:

1. Who is the greatest creator?
2. Why did the writer astonish when he went to Africa?
3. What did the writer see in Africa?

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The best meaning for the underlined word "creator" is
a) discoverer b) maker c) producer d) designer
2. " fabulous " means
a) fantastic b) intelligent c) clever d) comfortable

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Computers are a major technological breakthrough of the twenty first century. Their benefits are numerous. Yet, much can be said against them.

The main disadvantage of a computer is that staring at a screen for long periods of time can be damaging to the eyes, and sitting for hours at a time is certainly not healthy. Secondly, computers distract from social interactions such as conversation. People can be inclined to become anti-social and stay at home to use their computer. Finally, One of the major arguments against the use of computers is that the more jobs which are done by computers, the fewer are done by people.

However, the advantages of computers are numerous, such as the undeniable educational benefits, especially to children. School subjects become more interesting when presented on a computer screen. Moreover, computers can be fun with a seemingly endless variety of games which can be played on them. In addition, computers are valuable to any business, making life easier and saving time by being capable of storing and retrieving vast amounts of information at the touch of a button. Furthermore, personal gains can be seen as the use of computers increases powers of concentration. To sum up, there are strong arguments both for and against the use of computers.

a) Give short answers to the following questions:

- 1- How do school subjects become more interesting?
- 2- How do computers affect social life?

3- Find words in the passage which mean the following:

- a) important development or discovery.
- b) find again or extract stored information.

b) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4-Some people have the negative opinion about computers that they

- a) solve the problem of unemployment
- b) increase the number of unemployed people
- c) help people find more jobs
- d) create more job opportunities

5- The word "fewer" in the 2nd paragraph refers to

- a) arguments
- b)computers
- c) people
- d) jobs

D. The Reader (Gulliver's Travels)

a) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Gulliver was able to break the ropes on his left hand. Why do you think he didn't break the rest of his ropes and get free of the tiny people?
- 2- How did Gulliver get to the capital city? Where did he stay there? Was he able to go anywhere he wanted?

b) Read the quotation and answer the questions:

1. "You're so small and so weak."

- A) Who said these words? To whom?
- B) What did Gulliver do with the other five men?
- C) How did the guards and the little man feel when Gulliver moved the knife towards the little man's hands? What did they think he would do to the little man?

c) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 3- Perhaps because they could see that Gulliver was not trying to escape, the little men became violent.
- 4- Gulliver could hear wood being cut next to him. He guessed that they were destroying something.

E. Writing

Write a letter of about 100 words about:

You are a student who is doing a project on Egyptian export companies. Write a business letter to Mr. Walid, Manager, Edfu Sugar Company. You want to arrange a visit to ask about the company. You can visit the company any time next week. Your address is 20 Horreya Street, Edfu.

F. Translation

a) Translate into Arabic:

The high cost of living is one of the most complicated problems in Egypt. To bring the prices down, both the government and the individuals should work together. Investment should be encouraged and production should be increased.

b) Translate into English:

- 1- تحاول مصر جذب رؤوس الأموال العربية و الأجنبية للاستثمار في مجال الصناعة.
- 2- يجب أن يعرف العالم بأسره أن مصر بلد محب للسلام و ضد الإرهاب.

Unit 3 - Today's Money

money	مال	complain	يشكو	machine	آلة
account	حساب	connection	اتصال	make notes	يعمل ملاحظات
activities	أنشطة	contact	يتصل	market	سوق
adult	بالغ	cost	يكلف	money lender	مرايبي
advantages	مميزات	credit card	بطاقة إئتمان	online	على النت
allow	يسمح	customers	زبائن	order	أمر
among	بين	debit card	بطاقة مسبقة الدفع	ordinary	عادي
anxious	قلق - تواق	debt	دين	pay for	يدفع لـ
area	مساحة	decrease	يقلل	persuade	يقنع
arrange	يعد - يرتب	deliver	يسلم	pick up	يلتقط
arrangement	ترتيب - إعداد	details	تفاصيل	plastic	بلاستيك
attract	يجذب	disadvantages	عيوب	pockets	جيوب
attractive	جذاب	do internet	يستخدم النت	popular	شعبي - محبوب
avoid	يتجنب	dollar	دولار	prefer	يفضل
bank	بنك	Euro	يورو	problem	مشكلة
banking	تعاملات بنكية	false	زائف	recently	حديثا
banknotes	عملات ورقية	give back	يرد	refuse	يرفض
bargain	صفقة	go shopping	يتسوق	report	يقرر - تقرير
barter	مقايضة	go wrong	خطأ	researcher	باحث
birthday	عيد ميلاد	goods	بضائع	salt	ملح
borrow	يستعير	groups	مجموعات	sample	عينة
broadband	وصلة نت سريعة	growth	نمو	shoppers	متسوقين
buy for	يشترى لـ	guitar	جيتار	shopping	تسوق
by post	بالبريد	habits	عادات	surf	يتصفح
cards	كروت	half price	نصف الثمن	survey	دراسة
cash	نقدا	have a choice	يختار	technology	تكنولوجيا
cash card	بطاقة صرف	impossible	مستحيل	teenager	مراهق
catalogue	كتالوج	in cash	يدفع نقدا	traditional	تقليدي
change	يغير	increase	يزيد	user- friendly	سهل الاستخدام
changing	تغيير	incredible	لا يصدق	website	موقع نت
cheque	شيك	interview	مقابلة	worried	قلق
clients	عملاء	interviewer	محاور	worry about	يقلق على
coins	عملات معدنية	lend	يقرض	would rather	يفضل
company	شركة	look on the net	يدخل على النت	yen	ين

كلمات و عكسه Words & antonyms

advantage = merit	ميزة	disadvantage = demerit	عيب
borrow	يقترض / يستعير	lend	يسلف
buy	يشترى	sell	يبيع
credible	يصدق	incredible	لا يصدق
lazy	كسلان	active	نشط
credit	دائن	debit	مدين
possible	ممکن	impossible	مستحيل
priceless	لا يقدر بثمن	worthless	عديم القيمة
safe	آمن	dangerous = unsafe	خطير
valuable = invaluable	قيم / ذو قيمة	valueless	بلا قيمة

Important Vocabulary

an urgent solution to	حل عاجل لـ	make great achievements	يحقق إنجازات عظيمة
conserve the environment	يحافظ علي البيئة	mass media	وسائل الإعلام
desert reclamation	استصلاح الصحراء	ministry of education	وزارة التعليم
developed countries	الدول المتقدمة	natural resources	الموارد الطبيعية
economic problems	مشكلات اقتصادية	preserve the environment	يحافظ علي البيئة
extensively	علي نطاق واسع	take measures	يتخذ إجراءات
job opportunities	فرص العمل	terrorism	الإرهاب

Expressions

advantage to / of	ميزة لـ	log onto the internet	يدخل علي الانترنت
at the cheapest price	بأرخص سعر	look for = search for	يبحث عن
at the cinema	في السينما	order by phone	يطلب بالتليفون
at the weekend	في نهاية الأسبوع	order from the internet	يطلب عن طريق الانترنت
be based on	معتمد علي	over the years	علي مر السنين
buy... for someone	يشترى ..من أجل شخص	pass from ... to	ينقل من ..إلي
by road	برا	pay by cheque	يدفع بشيك
communicate with	يتصل بـ	pay by credit card	يدفع ببطاقة الائتمان
complain about something	يشكو من شيء	pay for	يدفع
complain to someone	يشكو إلي شخص	pay in cash	يدفع نقدا
decrease in	نقص في	put money into an account	يضع مال في حساب
discount on	خصم علي	set up a business	ينشئ مشروع تجاري
excited about	يشعر بالإثارة من	thank for	يشكر من أجل
growth in	زيادة أو نمو في	trade with	يتاجر مع
increase in	زيادة في	worry about	يقلق بشأن

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
Attract يجذب	Attraction جذب	Attractive جذاب	Attractively بشكل جذاب
Complain يشكو	Complaint شكوى		
Connect يوصل	Connection وصلة		
Grow ينمو	Growth نمو		
Interest يهتم	Interest اهتمام	Interesting شيق	Interestingly من المثير للاهتمام
	Tradition تقليد	Traditional تقليدي	Traditionally بطريقة تقليدية

Definitions

Adult	- A Fully grown person.	شخص بالغ / راشد
bank account	- An arrangement that allows you to keep money in a bank.	حساب مصرفي
Bank notes	- Money, which is made of paper.	عملة ورقية
bargain	- Something that is a good price.	صفقة
Barter	- exchanging goods is an old way of buying things.	المقايضة
Broadband	- A fast connection with the internet.	وصلة نت سريع
Cash	- The money that you carry in your pocket	نقدية
Catalogue	- A large book that contains pictures and information about a product	كتالوج
Cheque	- A paper that is an instruction to a bank to pay money to someone	شيك مصرفي

Coins	- Money, which is made of metal like gold or silver.	عملة معدنية
Credit card	- Plastic money, which is used for buying things and paying later.	بطاقة إئتمان
Currency	The money of a country (group of countries) like dollar, pound,..etc	عملة الدولة
Debit card	- Plastic money when you use it, money leaves your bank immediately.	بطاقة سابقة الدفع
Online	by being connected to the internet	على الانترنت
Surf	look for information (on the internet)	يتصفح
traditional	- An old or way, out of date. /not using modern ideas	تقليدي
User - friendly	- easy to use	سهل الاستخدام

Language Notes

let + المصدر + مفعول يسمح
 - They let us use their car.
 allow (permit) + مفعول + مصدر يسمح
 - They allowed us to use their car.
 allow + (v + ing) .. يقبل بـ / يسمح بـ
 - The government doesn't allow breaking the law.

exchange يستبدل - يتبادل
 - She exchanged the blouse yesterday.
 exchange for يستبدل بـ
 - She exchanged the blouse for a blue jeans.
 exchange... With يتبادل مع شخص
 - I exchanged the mobile with Ali .
 in exchange for = in return with فى مقابل , على سبيل المبادلة
 - He gave his sister a camera in exchange for her CD player.

raise (d) + مفعول يرفع / يجمع مال / يربى حيوانات
 - He raises cattle ماشية for living.
 - Raise your hand if you want to answer.
 - Charities raise money for the poor and the ill.
 rise - rose - risen يرتفع / تشرق / ينهض / يزداد (بدون مفعول)

- The sun rises in the east.
 - She rose at 7.30 am.
 - I rose to welcome the visitors. - Prices have risen too much recently.
 - She rose at 7.30 am.
 - I rose to welcome the visitors. - Prices have risen too much recently.
 arise arose arisen يزداد عن الحد / يحتدم / ينشأ (بدون مفعول)

- This problem arose from his bad behaviour. سلوك / تصرف
 - Speak down, don't arouse the baby.
 arouse (مفعول) aroused يثير / يوقظ
 - Her words aroused the teacher's anger.

- Raise / increase the prices يرفع أو يزيد الأسعار
 - Reduce / bring down the prices يقلل الأسعار
 - The prices rise / go up الأسعار ترتفع أو تزداد أو ترتفع
 - The prices fall / go down الأسعار تنخفض
 - Be good value for money يستحق ما يدفع فيه من مال
 - Be poor value for money لا يستحق ما يدفع فيه من مال
 - Control the prices يسيطر أو يتحكم في الأسعار
 - The financial crisis الأزمة المالية

- Special (= not ordinary) من نوع خاص / متميز
 - special attention اهتمام خاص
 - special care رعاية خاصة
 - The government gives special care to reclaiming the desert.
 - He has got special faculties قدرات.
 - This is a special kind of cloth.

- private تفيد الملكية X - public عام - You have no right to interfere in my private life.

- habit (عادة شخص)
 - It is my habit to help the poor.
 - custom (عادة شعب)
 - It is an Egyptian custom to celebrate the 23rd of July Revolution.
 - tradition (تقليد / موروث)
 - She found it difficult to act against the traditions of the society.

- have/has to + مصدر = it is necessary for + مفعول
 - She has to study hard. = It is necessary for her to study hard.

→ - had to + مصدر = it was necessary for + مفعول
 - We had to sleep early. = It was necessary for us to sleep early.

- Borrow يستعير - يستلف
 - I borrowed my brother's bike.
 - lend يقرض - يسلف
 - My brother lent me his bike.

- similar to تماما مثل / مشابه لـ
 - My shoes are similar to yours. - Her blouse is the same as mine.

هناك **adverbs** معينة يمكن أن يبدأ بها الكلام و يأتي بعدها جملة كاملة:

- Interestingly / undoubtedly / unfortunately / luckily / strangely...etc.

- Interestingly, people prefer to use traditional ways of cooking.

- Undoubtedly, she is the cleverest student at school.

- Do internet banking

يتعامل مع البنك عن طريق الانترنت

- Do(make) carry out a survey

يقوم بعمل دراسة أو استطلاع رأي

- Debit card: بطاقة مسبقة الدفع وعند شراء شيء يخصم ثمنه من حسابك مباشرة

- Credit card: بطاقة ائتمان وتستخدم في الشراء ويتم خصم الثمن من الحساب فيما بعد

- pay by credit card = pay with a credit card. يدفع ببطاقة ائتمان - I always pay by credit card.

- pay for ثمن / يدفع ثمن - I used to pay for our drinks.

- pay in cash يدفع نقداً - We paid for the new machines in cash.

- Another + اسم مفرد يعد / one (= one more / a different one)

- This juice is fresh. I'd like another glass.

- They are leaving their flat next month, so they are looking for another one.

- Another + (few / number : two, three,...)

- The tourists will stay for another three days.

- My father is going to work for this company for another few months.

- Other + اسم جمع يعد (و أحيانا اسم لا يعد) / اسم جمع يعد

- This boy always throws stones on other children.

- They don't have other information about the accident.

- Others + v. يمكن أن تأتي في نهاية الجملة

- Some people are helpful; others are selfish. - Some leaders are greater than others .

- في حالة وجود أحد الكلمات الآتية يستخدم بعدها other :

(the/some/every / each / many/any /no/ two, three.....)

- Can you help me clean the other rooms? -He gave me an apple and took two other ones.

- I forgot to bring my homework like many other students.

- Likebest/most

- Which school subject do you like most? - I like English best.

- Between بين اثنين - I can see Ali between Omer and Ayman.

- Among بين أكثر من اثنين - She sat among the members of her family.

→ - subj. فاعل + have/has/had + Obj. مفعول + p.p....

- He has his flat cleaned every week. = I had my shoes polished this morning.

→ - مصدر + used to + فاعل اعتاد أن يفعل الشيء في الماضي (ولا يفعله الآن)

- He used to eat lots of sweets. - She used to be naughty when she was in primary school.

→ - use + الشيء + for + v.ing / (to+inf....)

- We use saws to cut wood. = We use saws for cutting wood.

→ - Obj. مفعول + be + used + (to + مصدر....) / (for+v.ing)

- Wood is used to make furniture. - Wood is used for making furniture.

→ - it takes + مصدر + وقت + to - It takes three years to finish the secondary stage.

- give back / repay يُعيد / يرجع / يدفع ما عليهِ

- He gave back the money he had borrowed from me.

= He repaid the money he had borrowed from me.

-- A four-year-old child

- I have a ten-year-old daughter.

- لاحظ عدم جمع كلمة **year** في العبارة السابقة لأنها تعتبر جزء من صفة مركبة:

- My daughter is ten years old.

- Look forward to +n./ v-ing يتطلع إلى

- I look forward to visiting grandpa.

- We look forward to her success.

- لاحظ استخدام **to+ inf.** بعد الكلمات الآتية :

- The first / the second / the next / the last -----+to- inf.

- I was the first to ask the teacher. - Ali was the last to drink the coffee.

- From..... to..... من.... إلى

- I travelled from Assuit to Aswan by train.

- The summer holiday lasts from June to August.

- complained that + جملة كاملة يشكو أن

- People complained that they didn't get what they order.

- complained about يشكو من

- In the cinema , we complained about noisy people.

- complained to يشكو إلى

- I complained to my father about the difficult exam.

- complain of يشكو من مرض

- I used to complain of headache.

Like prefer would rather

-subj.فاعل+ like+(v + ing) —————> more (better) than+ v .ing / n.

- I like playing football more than swimming .

-Subj.فاعل+ prefer + (v + ing) —————> to (v + ing)

-I prefer playing football to swimming .

-Subj.فاعل+ would rather + مصدر —————> than + مصدر

-I'd rather play football than swim .

Subj.فاعل+ had('d) better + المصدر

You had better wear heavy clothes.

Subj.فاعل+ would rather + المصدر

-I'd rather join the university.

ماضي بسيط + فاعل ثانى + would rather + فاعل أول

-I'd rather you didn't park here.

I'd rather he won the prize.

Subj.فاعل+ would prefer to + المصدر

-I would prefer to go to the club.

..... المصدر + rather than + المصدر

-I'd prefer to revise my lessons rather than watch TV.

Communication Skills

Asking for & giving information

Asking for information	Replies
- Excuse me, could I ask you some questions about...?	- Yes, of course.
- Could you tell me...?	- Yes, that's fine. / - Yes, certainly.
- Can you say why / why not?	- I'd rather not answer that question.
- Thank you for your time.	- You're welcome.

Exercises

Respond to each of the following situation:

- Someone asks you a question that you do not want to answer.
- You ask your father if he used to go shopping when he was young.
- You ask your friend about his favourite sport?
- Your friend broke your camera and you forgave him.
- You suggest visiting the Pyramids.
- You thank your friend for helping you.
- You want Ahmad to tell you about the subjects he studies at school.
- You want to know your friend's opinion of the DVD. What do you say?
- You want to ask which subject your teacher liked best when he/she was at school.
- You want to ask your friend the reason why he/she likes English best.
- Your friend suggest watching a new film
- Your friend thinks that we will do most of our things online, you agree.

where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

1- A: How long does it take to go to the airport? B : about an hour. A : ok, hurry up please.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

2- A: Can I change these dollars into pounds? B : Of course , Sir, How many dollars? B: 100 dollars.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

Choose the correct answer:

1.is a way of paying for things.
a- Cash b- Money c- Cart d- Coin
2. The forms of money have changedthe years.
a- on b- in c- over d- into
3. After I had bought it, I found it.....less than half the price in another shop.
a- about b- by c- of d- for
4. I'll go to the bank tosome money.
a- lend b- give c- borrow d- loan
5. How much is this, please? — I'm a..... , not a shop assistant.
a- consumer b- shop owner c- customer d- manager
6. paying only 20.000 pounds for this car is really a
a- loss b- profit c- bargain d- damage
7. There has been an increase....the number of broadband internet connections.
a- to b- in c- for d- of
8. Thinking that the earth isis a ridiculous idea.
a- round b- spherical c- circular d- flat
9. With a few clicksthe mouse, you can order what you like online.
a- at b- on c- of d- from
10. Some people prefer to go to the bank when they want to put money into their ...
a- accounts b- debits c- savings d- banking
11. If you buy something for less than its usual price. This is a.....for you.
a- good b- loss c- cheap d- bargain
12. When I buy something, I always pay in.....
a- money b- credit card c- cash d- debit card
13. Credit cards are so popular that one day people may stop using
a- cash b- money c- currency d- shopping
14. I.....have tea after lunch.
a- prefer b- 'd rather c- want d- 'd like
15. I'd rather.....fast in town.
a- not driving b- not to drive c- don't drive d- not drive
16. If you buy things.....you can not look at them or pick them up.
a- online b- by credit card c- from shops d- broadband
17. I.....the hotel and booked a room for five days.
a- contacted b- conducted c- connected d- contracted
18. France's.....is Euro.
a- coin b- currency c- cash d- banknote
19. People need quicker and easier ways.....pay for things.
a- to b- of c- for d- on
20. Online companies have interesting websites to try to.....customers.
a- come b- attract c- admire d- laugh at
21. You can find new furniture in this.....There is a fantastic bed room on page 20.
a- shop b- catalogue c- flat d- company
22. Not only these things, you can.....anything online, even food.
a- shop b- connect c- order d- deliver
23. When you use a.....money leaves your bank immediately.
a- credit card b- plastic money c- debit card d- plastic card
24. To shop online, you have to have a computer.....to the internet.
a- used b- entered c- lined d- connected
25. If you have a.....connection, you can connect to the internet very quickly.
a- computer b- broadband c- online d- website
26. The dress my sister ordered.....the internet was not of high quality.
a- to b- from c- for d- of
27. Some products are always the same.....you buy them online or from a shop.
a- although b- when c- however d- whether
28. My wife.....to buy things online, so we always go shopping.
a- would like b- prefers c- would rather d- refuses
29. Many people prefer the.....way of buying things from shops and markets.
a- modem b- traditional c- online d- convenient
30. People everywhere are using the internet for many different
a- times b- ways c- sites d- activities

31.is the kind of money used by a certain country.
a- Currency b- Credit c- Cash d- Coin
32. People who buy things.....don't have to go to the shops.
a- by credit card b- online c- by debit card d- in cash
33. You can order something online and have it.....to your home
a- arrived b- delivered c- reached d- received
34. If you want to save money, you can open a bank
a- account b- accountant c- accounted d- accountancy
35. It's a really good camera. How much did you.....for it?
a- buy b- pay c- cost d- spend
36. People.....busy lives prefer to buy things online
a- of b- for c- with d- as
37. I'm going to pay.....cheque. — OK, as you like.
a- to b- by c- for d- of
38. Here are clothes.....madam. Open it, have a look and choose the style you want.
a- design b- catalogue c- fashion d- shop
39. Something that's.....doesn't use new ideas.
a- additional b- professional c- traditional d- essential
40.makes you late for work is the train, I think.
a- What b- why c- Which d- How
41. I'd like to shop for a new mobile. You could.....online.
a- shop b- connect c- phone d- look for
42. I want to.....onto the internet for some useful information.
a- connect b- look for c- enter d- get
43. One advantage of the internet is that you can shop.....home.
a- at b- from c- in d- to
44. A / Anis a fully grown person.
a- child b- kid c- adult d- odd
45. A is an instruction to the bank to pay somebody.
a- cheque b- credit card c- cash d- payment
46. Nowadays, more and more people are using.....cards to pay for things.
a- cash b- credit c- money d- debit
47. In the future, all our banking will be.....on the internet.
a- done b- connected c- made d- contacted
48. He is.....the internet to get information about swine flu.
a- looking for b- surfing c- connecting with d- contacting
49. You have to have a.....to buy things from the internet
a- money b- broadband c- credit card d- visa
50. If you order something online, it can.....a long time to arrive.
a- spend b- wait c- waste d- take
51. People can buy different kinds of goods.....internet shops.
a- to b- from c- for d- of
52. My wife wasn't very pleased.....the present I bought for her birthday.
a- of b- from c- with d- by
53. A user-friendly website is the one that is.....to use.
a- easy b- difficult c- good d- bad
54. Only.....can get a credit card or debit card.
a- giants b- rich people c- adults d- internet shoppers
55. Most of my friends would rather.....their holiday in Alexandria.
a- to spend b- spending c- spend d- to spending
56. If I had.....to go shopping, I wouldn't shop online
a- time b- chance c- money d- card
57. Regrettably, the computer I ordered online was when it arrived.
a- delivered b- connected c- delayed d- broken
58. Ahmed's car has got a computer that connects.....the internet.
a- to b- on b- with d- by
59. Dalia has a broadband connection. Broadband means a ...internet connection.
a- modern b- traditional c- fast d- slow
60. I would.....buy things online if I had time to go shopping.
a- like b- rather c- prefer d- never
61. Click the mouse to get.....the internet.
a- to b- into c- by d- onto
62. People who.....internet banking, don't need to go to their banks to borrow money.
a- do b- make c- go d- need
63. I don't buy newspapers because I read.....ones.
a- morning b- everyday c- evening d- online
64. Someone who has a.....can get the money they need from a cash machine.

a- credit card

b- bank account

c- debit card

d- online banking

65. My favouriteare ones which deal with sport news.

a- webs

b- wings

c- websites

d- windows

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Do you prefer modern or tradition films?
2. Have you ever bought Cameras in line?
3. He couldn't decide which one he liked good.
4. He is poor, so can't buy a car
5. He is too fat, so he has to eat much.
6. He leaves school and worked in a bookshop.
7. He preferred read books to selling them.
8. He studies hard so as not to succeed
9. He thinks he wanted to be a scientist.
10. He was driving with one hand and waving with the another.
11. How do people pay to the things they buy?
12. I look forward to see that play.
13. I need to draw some money out of my discount.
14. I prefer go to the cinema this weekend.
15. I serve the internet almost every day.
16. I think the story he told you being true.
17. I wouldn't rather answer that question.
18. I'd like to go for a long voyage by train.
19. I'd rather reading a book in my spare time.
20. In my opinion, there will be a remark growth in internet shopping.
21. Interesting, many people prefer to use traditional banks than online banking.
22. Many people in Egypt still wear conditional clothes.
23. Many people would rather pay on cash.
24. Michael Faraday was born in England in 1791.
25. Never He neglects his work
26. Nowadays, most people buy goods on a credit card.
27. Omar has bought a camera to his sister.
28. One day, I'd like to work for a charity organization.
29. Services show that more people prefer using computers to watching TV.
30. She allowed me using her computer.
31. She wants to be a doctor but She will enter the faculty of Medicine.
32. She was the last student arrives at school.
33. The government gives private care to setting up new projects.
34. The government is trying to contract more tourists to visit Egypt.
35. When I need money, I always lend some from my friend.

Grammar

The Past Perfect Tense

Form

Subj. الفاعل + had + P.P.

- I had studied English before I travelled to New York.

Negation

Subject + hadn't + p.p. +

-They hadn't watched the match before they went shopping.

Yes / No Q.

Had + Subj. الفاعل + P.P. ?

-Had Soha tidied her room by the time she went to school?

-Yes ,she had.

-No ,she hadn't.

'Wh-' Q.

Q.W. اداة استفهام + had+ subject+ P.P. ?

-What had happened before you phoned the police?

Passive

Obj المفعول + had+ been + p.p.

English had been studied by me before I travelled to New York.

الاستخدامات Uses

- يعبر الماضي التام عن حدث وقع قبل حدث آخر في الماضي:

- I had never seen such a beautiful beach before I went to Hurghada.
- I did not have any money because I had lost my wallet.

- يعبر الماضي التام عن حدث وقع قبل وقت معين في الماضي:

- Rania had never been to the theatre before last night.
- I had passed the exam before July.

- كما يستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عما قاله الشخص أو اعتقده:

- He told me that they had already paid the bill.
- He said that he believed that Ali had moved to Luxor.

- I thought that we had already decided on a name for the baby.

- يوضع الظرف أو الحال (adverb) بعد (had) في الجملة الخبرية و بعد الفاعل في الاستفهام:

- I had previously studied English before I travelled to New York.
- Had Soha really tidied her room by the time she went to school?
- He had already started to make breakfast before his wife woke up.

ملاحظات عامة علي الماضي التام

After/as soon as/before/by the time/when/till/until

- After + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) + ماضي تام (حدث أول) = After + v.ing..... + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) .

= Having + p.p. + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

- After she had done the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home.
- After doing the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home.
- Having done the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home.

- as soon as + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) + ماضي تام (حدث أول) = Immediately after (on) + v.ing... + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

= Having + p.p. + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

- He told me as soon as he had heard the news.
- He told me immediately after hearing the news.
- Having heard the news, he told me.

- After/as soon as + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

- After I finished my lunch, I began to revise my lessons.
- My mum asked me to answer the phone as soon as it rang.

-Before/by the time + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) + ماضي تام (حدث أول)

- Before she phoned, she had had tried to send an e-mail.
- By the time I reached the station, the train had left.

Before+ v.ing + ماضي تام (حدث أول)

- Before phoning, she had had tried to send an e-mail.

-Before/by the time + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان)

- By the time I arrived home, my sister finished the cooking.
- I put my bag on the floor before I opened the door.

- ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط	- When I arrived at the station, the train had left.
- ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام	- When I had arrived at the station, the train left.
= ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام	- The moment I had arrived at the station, the train left.
= ماضي بسيط + v.ing / اسم n.	- On my arrival at the station, the train left.
- ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط	-When I arrived, the train left.

→ ماضي تام (حدث أول) + till/until + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) غالبا منفى

- I didn't go to school till/until I had had my breakfast.
- They didn't start the game until I had arrived.

→ (v. ing) / (اسم n.) - until - till + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) غالبا منفى

- I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast.
- They didn't start the game until my arrival.

لاحظ ايضا استخدام الماضي التام و الماضي البسيط بالطرق التالية:

- It was only when + ماضي تام (حدث أول) + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) + (that / ,)

= It wasn't until + ماضي بسيط (حدث ثان) + ماضي تام (حدث أول) + (that / ,)

- It was only when I had switched on the light that he entered the room.
- =It wasn't until I had switched on the light that he entered the room.

– يأتي الماضي التام والماضي البسيط مع التعبيرات الآتية ومعناها (لم يكـحتى.....)

- Subj. + had +no sooner+ p.p. Than+ ماضي بسيط(حدث ثان)
- = Subj. + had +hardly+ p.p. when + ماضي بسيط(حدث ثان)
- = Subj. + had + scarcely+ p.p. when + ماضي بسيط(حدث ثان)
- She had hardly left when her friends arrived.
- She had no sooner left than her friends arrived.
- She had scarcely left when her friends arrived.

-لاحظ عندما تأتي هذه الروابط في أول الجملة:

- No sooner had + فاعل + p.p.....than + فاعل + ماضي بسيط(حدث ثان)
- = Hardly had + فاعل + p.p.....when + فاعل + ماضي بسيط(حدث ثان)
- = Scarcely had+ فاعل + p.p.....when + فاعل + ماضي بسيط(حدث ثان)
- No sooner had she left than her friends arrived.
- Hardly had she left when her friends arrived.
- Scarcely had she left when her friends arrived.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer :

- 1.He had finished his training before hethe job.
a-got b-had got c-would get d-gets
- 2.After I.....the book, I gave it to my friend.
a-read b-had read c-have read d-reading
- 3.I helped him with his homework as soon as I.....my own.
a- do b- would do c- had done d-was doing
- 4.When I arrived at the station, the trainso I didn't catch it.
a-left b-would leave c-have left d-had left
- 5.He told me that healready bought a car.
a-has b-has had c-had d-is having
- 6.The secretary left the office afterthe letters.
a-typed b-had typed c-typing d-was typing
- 7.Hehome as soon as he had seen his brother off.
a- returns b- had returned c- will return d- returned
- 8.I.....him before I visited him.
a-will phone b-phoned c-had phoned d-phone
- 9.My bossafter I had done my work.
a-arrived b-had arrived c-arriving d-arrives
10. She started her work when shethe baby to bed.
a-had put b-puts c-has put d-will put
11. I had finished my work.....leaving the office.
a-before b-after c-when d-as soon as
12. When hethe game, he left in sadness.
a- had lost b- was lost c- has lost d- would lost
13. The pupils went out as so on as the bell.....
a- rings b- ringing c- had rung d- has rung
14. Heme his address after I had asked him twice.
a-had told b-tells c- told d -was telling
15. As soon as the pilot had seen the signal he.....a message
a-had sent b-has sent c-will send d-sent
16. When he looked into the street he found that the car.....
a-had gone b-went c-has gone d-goes
17. They decided to get married although they.....each other for only five months.
a- have known b- had known c- know d-would know
18. When I got home last night I found that somebody into the flat.
a- breaks b- broke c- had broken d- was breaking
19. Weour dinner before we went out for a walk.
a-had had b-had c-have d-have had
20.the letter after you had written it ?
a-Had you posted b-Did you post c-Do you post d- Have you posted
21. As soon as I heard the news IAzza.
a- have told b- told c- had told d- was telling
22. When Ithe composition, I showed it to my teacher.
a-write b- have written c- will write d- had written
23. Shea car after she had learned to drive.

- a- has bought b- bought c- will buy d- was buying*
24. After she got to school, she realized sheher homework.
a- had been forgotten b- was forgotten c- has forgotten d- had forgotten
25. After she.home from work, she sat down on the sofa and fell asleep.
a- comes b- has come c- was coming d- had come
26. By the time we reached the station, the train
a- had already left b- will already leave c- has left d- is already leaving
27. He had mended the car beforeit.
a- sells b- sold c- selling d- had sold
28. They couldn't go swimming because theytheir swimming suits.
a- were forgetting b- have forgotten c- will forget d- had forgotten
29. He went to bed immediately after.his homework.
a- doing b- had done c- did d- has done
30. After she had written the letter, she ...a stamp on it and took it to the post office.
a- puts b- will put c- put d- had put
31. The car didn't startwe had given it a push.
a- so that b- unless c- until d- because
32. The television didn't workNadia had broken it.
a- because b- until c- although d- if
33. Icome back home till I had finished all my work.
a- haven't b- don't c- won't d- didn't
34. The film was boring, so I turned off the TV before it
a- ends b- ended c- has ended d- had ended
35. Having learned to drive, hea car.
a- had bought b- has bought c- will buy d- bought
36. I Europe.
a) have never visited b) never visiting c) never visits d) never have visited
37. By the time my father was 18, he at work for two years.
a) has been b) had been c) was being d) was
38. What doing when I called?
a) have you been b) were you c) are you d) had you been
39. I didn't see my friend. When I arrived at her house, she out.
a) gone b) went c) has gone d) had gone
40. My sister's really happy. She the school maths prize.
a) has just won b) just won c) won just d) just has won
41. In the past, people the earth was flat.
a) were thinking b) had thought c) thought d) have thought
42. Look at this camera I for my sister yesterday.
a) have bought b) had bought c) was buying d) bought
43. At 7.15 yesterday evening, I dinner with my family.
a) had had b) was having c) have had d) had
44. By the age of ten, I to swim.
a) had learnt b) have learnt c) learnt d) was learning
45. Last night, while the internet, I found the camera was much cheaper to buy online.
a) surf b) was surfing c) have surfed d) am surfing
46. I didn't write to my friend until I his letter.
a) have received b) had received c) will receive d) was received
47. Almost everybody by the time we arrived yesterday.
a) had left b) has left c) was left d) was leaving
48. While Dalia was reading a book, Dina (watching-was watching-had watched) television.
a) watching b) had watched c) watched d) was watching

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. After taken my measurements, the tailor cut the material.
2. Alaa has been to France, he is still there.
3. Alexandria was the last place I was spending a holiday.
4. At the moment he has cleaned the room.
5. By the time my father was 18, he has been at work for two years.
6. Have you ever play computer games.
7. Having watching TV, I went to bed.
8. He didn't buy the chain of restaurants after he had become rich.
9. He didn't helped me last week.
10. He had eaten meat when he fell ill.
11. He had enjoyed the food as soon as he tasted it.
12. He has been watching the film since the last hour.
13. He hasn't written letters recently.

14. He leaves school and worked in a bookshop.
15. He preferred read books to selling them.
16. He would give me back my money a few hours ago.
17. I am understanding this math problem very well.
18. I didn't eat hamburger since last October.
19. I don't speak to him since Christmas.
20. I had just seen my friend Mona.
21. I had stayed for two hours in the clinic after the doctor arrived.
22. I will see a good film recently.
23. In 1999, I have visited my uncle in Alexandria.
24. In the past, people thought that the earth has been flat.
25. Just walking to school, I saw an accident
26. My sister is really happy. She is just winning the first prize.
27. No sooner had he seen the thief when he told the police.
28. No sooner The boy had fallen off his bicycle than the policeman hurried to help him.
29. She has been mopping the floor when she heard the bad news on the radio.
30. She slipped on a banana skin and breaks her leg.
31. What were you doing when I am calling you?
32. When my father come home, I was finishing my homework.
33. When we returned back home, we found that someone broke into our flat.
34. While was returning home, he saw the accident.

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

Experts and economists said that small industries could play an integral part in economic development in Egypt.

.....

.....

Louis Pasteur, the French scientist, has done really great services to humanity. He managed to discover how people could catch diseases. He also devised ways of preventing diseases from passing from one person to another.

.....

.....

Translate into English:

– الجمعيات الخيرية هامة جداً لأن لدينا العديد من المشاكل

.....

.....

– يستخدم الكثير من الناس بطاقات الإئتمان لشراء السلع والخدمات لأنها أكثر أمناً وأكثر راحة

.....

.....

Test 3

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to the following situations:

5. You want to ask which subject your teacher liked best when he/she was at school.
6. Someone asks you a question that you do not want to answer.
7. You want to ask your friend the reason why he/she likes English best.
8. You would like to thank someone for answering your questions.

2- Say where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

- 1 - A. May I take your order, sir? B. I'll have a steak, please.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 2- A: When did the accident happen? B: Two hours ago.
- A: What were you doing when you saw the accident? B: I was going to visit a friend of mine.

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. I need some money. Can I some from you?
a) lend b) want c) borrow d) give
2. She needed to change some when she arrived in London.
a) train b) credit card c) trade d) currency
3. the net means to look for things on the internet.
a) Sighting b) Surfing c) Sensing d) Serving
4. When you use a card, you can buy things and pay later.
a) credit b) debit c) debt d) cash
5. This coat was half-price. It was a real
a) bargain b) occasion c) opportunity d) second-hand
6. A website that is easy to use is
a) user-friendly b) friendly user c) use friendly d) friendly use
7. Most people keep their money in a bank
a) accounting b) accountant c) account d) accountancy
8. is a system of getting goods before you pay for them.
a) Debit b) Credit c) Currency d) Money
9. By the time he reached the bus stop, the bus
a) leave b) leaves c) will leave d) had left
10. I for the bus when my wallet was stolen.
a) have been waiting b) have waited c) waited d) was waiting
11. Why away last week-end?
a) didn't you go b) haven't you gone c) won't you go d) are you going
12. When she went home she found that she the wrong book.
a) buy b) has bought c) had bought d) would buy
13. Before the High Dam, some temples had been moved to safer places.
a) had built b) building c) built d) was building
14. The secretary left the office after she the letters.
a) types b) had typed c) typed d) typing
15. It a lot last night.
a) rained b) has rained c) had rained d) raining
16. We some new plays lately.
a) see b) will see c) would see d) have seen

4- Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1- I don't have any cash on me, so could I pay by click?
- 2- I don't speak to him since Christmas.
- 3- Internet connection via broadcast offers many advantages
- 4- My sister wants to open a bank deposit.
- 5- She has been mopping the floor when she heard the bad news on the radio.
- 6- She slipped on a banana skin and breaks her leg.

C-Reading Comprehension

5- Read the following passage then answer the questions:

During a recent car trip, I pulled into a rest area and was approached by a dirty man who asked for money. I rejected his appeal rationalizing that to give money to beggars would be to encourage a practice already on a disturbing rise in our country.

Later I had a change of heart, I handed the man ten pounds and wished him well, but I couldn't bring myself to grasp the outstretched hand he offered in appreciation. People begin and end almost every interaction with handshakes. Handshaking has become a thing of the past and increasingly dangerous, too. Risks associated with handshaking have become more threatening than the mere passing of germs from one person to another. For example, common colds are possible to pass from a person to another through handshaking. We might adopt an alternative to handshaking. The "namaste" is used as a display of respect when greeting someone. Similarly, the military salute would permit us to greet each other without touching. As a possible compromise between the "namaste" and the salute, we might consider the familiar Japanese bow.

Answer the following questions:

1. Why does the writer think that handshaking is a bad habit?
2. What is the advantage of a military salute?
3. Are you with or against handshaking? Why?

Choose the correct answer:

4- According to the writer, we.....get cold viruses by handshaking.

- a) can b) can never c) couldn't d) never

5- There arealternatives to handshaking.

- a) no b) two c) three d) four

6- Read the following passage and then answer the questions:

On leaving, Mrs. Magda gave last minute instructions to the new baby-sitter, a young girl of seventeen whose main work was to look after the baby. The girl had never done this work before and Mrs. Magda was a little bit anxious. "Make yourself comfortable, Soha." Mrs. Magda said. If the boy wakes up, go to his room and stay with him there until he goes back to sleep. Anyway, he is two years old, so you wouldn't have any trouble. My husband and I will be back at about five o'clock."

Mr. Kamal and his wife Magda returned rather later than they had expected. They heard the sound of TV. A light was still on in the living room. Their little baby was crying loudly. His face was covered with tears. Mrs. Magda went to the living room immediately and came out holding the baby who was very hungry.

"What is she doing there? Where is Soha? She is fast asleep. She has eaten all the food here!"

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why was Mrs. Magda worried about the baby-sitter?
2. What did Mr. and Mrs. Kamal find when they returned home?
3. Was Soha a good baby-sitter or a bad one? Why?

B. Choose the correct answer:

4 - Although Mrs. Magda gave strict instructions to the baby-sitter, she.....

- a) forgot them b) carried them out c) neglected them d) followed them

5 - Mrs. Magda came home.....

- a) before five b) after five c) at five d) at half past four

D- The Novel

7) (A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- What did Gulliver do to the six men who had shot arrows at him? What was the result of this action?
- 2- Why does the King worry that he cannot afford to keep Gulliver?

B) Read the following quotation and answer the questions.

"I'm very pleased that you're now free, but this is only because of the difficult situation in Lilliput."

- 1- Who said this?
- 2- What is the problem outside of Lilliput?
- 3- Why did the King of Lilliput send this person to Gulliver?

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 5- The little man's fright turned to anger when Gulliver used the knife to cut the ropes that had tied his hands together.
- 6- The guards told the King about Gulliver's cruelty to the people who had tried to hurt him.

E- Writing

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words on the following subject:

"How we should use money"

F- Translation

9- A) Translate into Arabic:

People use computers for many different activities, from reading online newspapers to listening to music , but the fastest growing areas of computer use are online shopping and internet banking.

.....
.....

B) Translate into English:

يجب أن تتعاون كل دول العالم لحل الأزمة المالية.
التسوق عبر الانترنت أصبح شائعاً هذه الأيام.

Unit 4 - *Teamwork*

area	منطقة	goals	أهداف	puzzle	فزرة
arrangement	ترتيب	gorilla	غوريلا	quality	نوعية - جودة
articles	أدوات - مقالات	groups	مجموعات	rainy	ممطر
attach	يوصل - يربط	helpful	مساعد - نافع	reader	قارئ
badminton	كرة الريشة	hockey	هوكي	recent	حديث
beat	يهزم - يفوز	how good	باله من شئ جيد	refuse	يرفض
bit	قطعة من	hunt	يصطاد	reply	يرد
boxing	ملاكمة	illustrator	رسام توضيحي للكتب	score	يحرز هدف
bring up	يربي	imagine	يتخيل	shoes	حذاء
cage	قفص	individual sports	رياضات فردية	situation	موقف
cartoons	كارتون	intention	نية	size	حجم
choice	إختيار	jogging	الجرى الخفيف	sports centre	مركز رياضي
co- operate	يتعاون	keep fit	يحافظ على لياقته	squash	إسكواش
combination	تركيب - مزج	large	كبير - ضخم	string	خيط
combine	يركب - يخلط	local	محلي	succeed	ينجح
complex	معقد	look like	يشبه	surgeon	جراح
decide on	يقرر	lose	يفقد - يخسر	survival	نجاة من حادث
definite	محدد	make prediction	يتنبأ	survive	ينجو من حادث
deliver	يسلم	manager	مدير	take photos	يأخذ صور
depend on	يعتمد على	members	أعضاء - أفراد	talk about	يتحدث عن
designer	مصمم	mix with	يخلط بـ	team games	ألعاب جماعية
do sport	يمارس رياضة	pack	قطيع من الحيوانات	together	معا
editor	محرر	pass	يعبر - يمرر	tolerance	تسامح
elephant	فيل	patients	مرضى	tolerant	متسامح
enormous	عديد	photographer	مصور	tournament	منافسة
expect	يتوقع	piece of	جزء من	weather	طقس
experiment	تجربة	plan	خطة	weekend	نهاية الأسبوع
extra	إضافي	predict	يتنبأ	wheel	عجلة
fall off	يسقط	prefer	يفضل	wind	رياح
final	نهائي	prey	فريسة	wolf	ذئب
football	كرة قدم	price	السعر	wolves	ذئاب
goalkeeper	حارس مرمى	pull	يسحب - يجر	Wrestling	مصارعة

Expressions

answer to	حل أو إجابة لـ	lose to	يخسر أمام
ask for advice	يطلب نصيحة	mix with people	يختلط بالناس
at times = sometimes	أحيانا	pass on knowledge to	ينقل المعرفة إلي
attached to=tied to	مربوط بـ	pass the ball to	يمرر الكرة إلي
benefit from	يستفيد من	people of different ages	الناس من مختلف الأعمار
come out	تصدر (صحيفة مثلا)	refer to	يشير إلي
cooperate with	يتعاون مع	related to	مرتبط بـ
depend on = rely on	يعتمد علي	send into space	يرسل إلي الفضاء
go on holiday	يذهب في إجازة	show tolerance towards	يظهر تسامح تجاه
hunt in packs	يصطاد في مجموعات	solution to	حل لـ
live in groups	يعيش في جماعات	specialize in	يتخصص في
live on the moon	يعيش علي القمر	take responsibility for	يتحمل المسؤولية عن
look out of the window	ينظر من النافذة	work with each other	يعملون مع بعضهم البعض

Important Vocabulary

achieve success	يحقّق النجاح	Freedom of the press	حرية الصحافة
backbone	العمود الفقري	globalization	العولمة
challenges	تحديات	national duty	واجب قومي
competition	منافسة	national project	مشروع قومي
Consequences	نتائج / عواقب	productive society	مجتمع منتج
democratic atmosphere	جو ديمقراطي	threaten	يهدد
deprive of	يحرّم من	vital role	دور حيوي

Derivatives

verb		Noun		Adjective	
Believe	يعتقد	belief	اعتقاد		
Co operate	يتعاون	Co operation	تعاون	operative	تعاوني
combine	يمزج / يخلط	Combination	مزيج / خليط		
Decide	يقرر	Decision	قرار	Decisive	واضح / حازم
differ	يختلف	difference	فرق / اختلاف	Different	مختلف / مميز
fit	يناسب / يلائم	fitness	لياقة	fit	لائق / ملائم
		greediness / greed	الطمع / الجشع	greedy	طماع / جشع
intend	ينوي / يقصد	Intention	نية / قصد		
Predict	يتنبأ	Prediction	تنبؤ		
protect	يحمي	protection	حماية / وقاية	protective	واقّي
prove	يثبت / يبرهن	proof	برهان / دليل		
tolerate	يتسامح مع	tolerance	التسامح	tolerant	متسامح

Words & antonyms كلمات و عكسها

cooperative	متعاون	uncooperative	غير متعاون
enormous	هائل	tiny	صغير جدا
fit	لائق (بدنيا)	unfit	غير لائق
flexible	مرن	inflexible	غير مرن
ill	مريض	well	بصحة جيدة
intelligent	ذكي	stupid	غبّي
narrow	ضيق	wide=spacious	واسع / فسيح
patient	صبور	impatient	غير صبور
pull	يشد / يجذب	push	يدفع
refuse	يرفض	accept	يقبل
simple	بسيط	complex	معقد
strong	قوي	weak	ضعيف
tie	يربط	untie	يفك

Definitions

attach	- To fasten or join one thing to another.	يربط / يرفق
Bring up	- To look after children until they are adults.	يربي انسان
cooperate	- To work with someone else in order to achieve what you both want	يتعاون
group	- Several people or things that are all together in the same place, or that are connected in some way.	مجموعة
pack	- Wild animals that hunt together.	مجموعة حيوانات تصطاد معا
string	- A thin rope made of several twisted threads , used for tying things	حبل رفيع / خيط
Tolerance	- allowing others to do what they want without criticizing, punishment.	تسامح
team	- People who play a sport or game together, or people who work together to do a particular job.	فريق

Language Notes

- لاحظ استخدام الأفعال (play/go/do) مع الألعاب الرياضية:

Play -football/basketball/tennis/squash/volleyball/soccer....etc.

Go -fishing/sailing/swimming/running/water skiing/riding....etc.

Do -sports/karate/judo/athletics/gymnastics/high jump/ weight lifting/ wrestling/ spear throwing...etc.

- predict = - make prediction about يتنبأ

-We can't predict the time of his arrival.

= We can't make prediction about the time of his arrival.

- ask for advice يطلب نصيحة - Ahmed asked me for advice.

- give advice يعطي نصيحة - I gave Ahmed advice.

- prey فريسة - Lions attack their prey in packs.

- pray يصلي - We pray in mosques.

- cooperate on يتعاون في - They cooperated on some tasks.

- cooperate with يتعاون مع - I need to cooperate with them.

- cooperate to + مصدر - We have to cooperate to succeed.

- on (your-my-her....) own = بنفسه = by + ضمير منعكس = alone.

- I can do the shopping on my own(alone). = I can do the shopping by myself.

- of (his) own ملكه تدل على الملكية -He has a room of his own.

- لاحظ أن كلمة sports تستخدم صفة قبل بعض الكلمات مثل:

- sports clothes a sports festival a sports centre

- Do / play sports يمارس الرياضة -We should play (do) sports to keep healthy.

- sportsman رياضي -Sportsmen are always fit

- sporty صفة تأتي قبل للاسم - He is the grandson of a sporty family.

- Experience خبرة -This job needs a lot of experience.

- conduct / carry out / do an experiment يجري تجربة

-We do (carry out – conduct) science experiments in the school lab.

- Encourage to +inf. يشجع علي - Mum encourages us to read.

- discourage from + v+ing يمنع من - We should discourage drivers from driving carelessly.

-Spend (time) + v.ing - I spent the afternoon watching TV.

-Go = become يصبح - Go(bad /يفسد blind /يصبح أعمى deaf /يصبح أصم dumb /يصبح أبله)

-Get = become يكتب - Get (fit /يصبح لائق جسميا / get angry / يغضب / get depressed / يكتب)

- train ... in يدرب علي
 - train as + وظيفة يتدرب كـ...
 - train for... لاجل يتدرب لـ

-Children should be trained in good work relations.
 -He is training as a doctor.
 - I train hard for the race.

- good at جيد في
 - good to طيب مع
 - good for- مفيد / صالح لـ.....

-I'm good at swimming.
 -He is good to all his neighbours.
 -Doing a sport is good for us.

-Have = have got = own يملك

- I have a mobile. = I have got a mobile. = I own a mobile.

- Do you have a mobile ? = Have you got a mobile? = Do you own a mobile?

I don't have = I haven't got = I don't own

- I don't have a mobile. = I haven't got a mobile. = I don't own a mobile.

في الماضي نستخدم had للتعبير عن الملكية :

- I had a red bike when I was in primary school.

نستخدم will have للتعبير عن الملكية في المستقبل:

- I will have new clothes tomorrow.

نستخدم have فقط للتعبير عن الملكية بعد to و الأفعال الناقصة وغيرها ولا يمكن استخدام have got بهذا الشكل:

- I want to have a big house.

-They should have millions of pounds to get this villa.

لاحظ أن have نستخدم بمعاني أخرى غير يملك و الحالات لا نستخدم بدلا منها have got:

-Have (a meal / a party / a holiday / an accident)

-End in a draw ينتهي بالتعادل

-The football match ended in a draw.

-Lose to يخسر أمام ..

- Egypt lost to Brazil by 4 goals to 3.

-Score a goal يحرز هدف (في الرياضة)

- Abu Terika scored two goals .

-Realize / achieve / reach a goal يحقق هدف (في الحياة)

الكلمات الآتية تستخدم adverb / adjective حسب وضعها في الجملة:

- Daily / weekly / monthly / yearly / early

-I gets a monthly salary of 2,000 pounds . (adj.)

-I get 2,000 pounds monthly. (adv.)

Communication Skills



Asking for & giving Advice

Asking for Advice	Giving Advice
- Which (sport) do you think I should choose?	- If you ask me, you should...
- I want to .. What do you think I should do?	- If I were you, I'd ...
	- I think you should...
- Can you give me some advice (about)..?	- Why don't you...?
- Can I ask your advice about...?	- It is a good idea to ...
	- The best thing is to ...

Exercises

Respond to each of the following situation:

1. A friend asks your advice about the best way to keep fit.
2. A friend wants to cook the family meal this evening, but can't decide what to make. Give advice.
3. Advise a friend who wants to take a younger brother out for the day but can't decide where to go.
4. Give advice to your friend about how to get high marks.

5. Someone asks what you want to study at university.
6. Someone asks you about your plans for your next holiday.
7. Someone asks your opinion about the weather.
8. You want to know your friend's favourite team.
9. Your friend asks for your advice about where to go on holiday.
10. Your friend asks your opinion about the best team in Egypt.
11. Your friend suggests watching a new film.

where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

- 1- A: Can I carry your order, sir? B: Yes, please. I'd like to have a steak.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 2- A: May I have two tickets to Aswan, please? B: Here you are.
A: How much are they? B: They are both LE sixty.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 3- A: You must pay a fine. B: Why? A: For parking in a 'No Parking' area.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 4- A: Could you clean the floor for me, please? B: Sure. When will dad come? A: He's coming soon.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

Choose the correct answer:

1. Ali has no.....for jokes of any kind. All employees do not like him.
a) cooperation b) situation c) tolerance d) difference
2. His.....is that I will be a successful player.
a) decision b) prediction c) intention d) cooperation
3.among people is very important.
a) Decision b) Prediction c) Intention d) Cooperation
4. Children always want to do something with other people.... their own age.
a) on b) at c) with d) of
5. How many times have you beenin Squash?
a) won b) beaten c) gained d) hit
6. Tennis is a sport which you can't play.....your own.
a) in b) by c) on d) with
7. If you ask me. you should.....football or basketball.
a) make b) do c) get d) train
8. How long has Usama been working.....the project?
a) in b) at c) on d) about
9. Before starting any work, you need to.....some decisions.
a) do b) make c) get d) show
10. The teacher asked us to get into.....of four.
a) teams b) packs c) flocks d) herds
11. Basketball and volleyball are.....sports.
a) collective b) team c) individual d) double
12. How often does Mohammed.....sports?
a) make b) go c) have d) do
13. What sports are you clever.....
a) in b) on c) at d) to
14. practicing sports can make you always.....
a) fit b) suitable c) proper d) fitted
15. Wolves usually hunt in a
a) team b) pack c) flock d) herd
16. The ill old man was saved by a.....of doctors.

- a) team b) pack c) flock d) herd
17. The.....of oxygen and hydrogen makes water.
a) cooperation b) combination c) prediction d) intention
18. His.....is to pass all of his exams next year. He is going to study hard.
a) cooperation b) combination c) prediction d) intention
19. Getting full markson how you have studied your lessons.
a) turns b) depends c) gets d) switches
20. They need some other clues to.....that the thief is guilty.
a) suggest b) prove c) improve d) approve
21. How.....are you at basketball?
a) well b) better c) good d) best
22. Are you good at football or you just.....with your friends?
a) mix b) acid c) mingle بختلط d) blend
23. What could.....wrong if a nurse refused to help a doctor?
a) make b) go c) have d) come
24. You should.....tolerance to all people.
a) do b) make c) appear d) show
25. Running and squash are..... sports.
a) team b) single c) only d) individual
26. What can I do to.....fit?
a) save b) keep c) retain d) protect
27. The boys are starting lots of sports at the.....centre.
a) sports b) sportive c) sporting d) sport
28. A football player mustn't forget that he is..... of a team.
a) a part b) the part c) part d) parts
29. Parents always care about bringing.....their children in a good way.
a) down b) up c) out d) off
30. If you are a football player, don't play alone and...the ball to the other players.
a) catch b) throw c) hit d) pass
31. The problem is so.....that we can't find a solution to it.
a) compound b) giant c) complex d) enormous
32. Can you think of ways.....which animals such as lions cooperate with each other?
a) on b) in c) at d) by
33. The experiment.....the two birds shows that even birds can cooperate.
a) a b) with c) about d) in
34.hunt their preys in packs
a) Lions b) Cats c) Donkeys d) Birds
35. There are many..... where people should work together
a) situations b) packs c) co operations d) experiments
36. We need to.....to finish the work in a short time.
a) cooperate b) bring tip c) attach d) mix
37. Who will you cooperate.....?
a) on b) in c) at d) with
38. Did you benefit.....the story you read?
a) of b) with c) by d) from
39. How many.....does a football team have?
a) members b) packs c) sports d) staff
40. He was happy because he had won the tennis
a) grouping b) combination c) tournaments d) collection
41. What.....can you give for coming late?
a) reason b) cause c) effect d) centre
42. He is thinking deeply as he wants to make a.....
a) combination b) decision c) result d) reason
43. The salary you will get..... on your experience.
a) depends b) chooses c) mixes d) proves
44. He is a good player. He has..... a lot of goals.
a) won b) gained c) scored d) attached

45. He always asks his father advice.
 a) on b) about c) for d) at
46. We need some pieces of.....to tie the little tree to the stick.
 a) string b) pack c) chain d) preys
47.show that even birds can cooperate.
 a) Experiences b) Experiments c) Discoveries d) Explorations
48. In order to get the box nearer, you have to pull the string...to it.
 a) contacted b) touched c) attached d) communicated
49. I study English and Arabic.....the same time this year.
 a) on b) in c) with d) at
50. You need to cooperate with people who are different.....you.
 a) from b) than c)to d)of

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. A good business person can quickly make an important decide.
2. Doctors advise people not to mingle with other people when there is a spreading infection.
3. Doctors test athletes regular for drugs nowadays.
4. Elephants live in family packs to bring up their young and protect ill members.
5. Football and handball are group sports.
6. Football players pass the ball to each other until one player can win a goal.
7. For animals and humans, cooperate is important for survival.
8. From your own personal experiment, what are the qualities of a good person?
9. He always makes tolerance to the employees in his company.
10. He is very different than his brother.
11. Her intend is to pass all of her exams next year.
12. How do elephants help with each other?
13. I hope Egypt will win Brazil in football one day.
14. I like him because he is very helping.
15. If you ask me, you should train football or basketball.
16. In a recent experience, scientists showed that birds can cooperate on complex jobs.
17. Lions hunt their prey in herds.
18. My shoes are so tight that they don't suit my feet at all.
19. My sister studies hard so as to She wants to be top other class.
20. Parents should bring on their children to be good citizens.
21. Running is a kind of sport that you can do it by your own.
22. Scientists found that they could successfully learn many pairs of birds to get their food in this way
23. She is so kind person that she takes care of her elderly neighbours.
24. She scored the tennis match against her friend.
25. She told that Ali had won the medal.
26. Squash and swimming are examples of single sports.
27. Summer in kuwait is hot than summer in Cairo
28. The combine of the wind and rain made driving very difficult.
29. The herd of doctors did a successful operation and saved the young boy
30. The marks you get depend in how much you study.
31. The photographer is the person who draws pictures and cartoons for a magazine.
32. The student asked his teacher for advice.
33. There are many stations where groups of people need to cooperate to succeed.
34. These pieces of string are contacted to that box.
35. To be a successful team person, you may need to cooperate with other people.

Grammar

Expressing The Future

1-The Simple Future Tense

-- يتكون المستقبل البسيط المبني للمعلوم من:

Form

- Subj. فاعل + will / shall + inf.....

- لاحظ استخدام will مع كل الضمائر ويمكن استخدام (shall) مع (I / we) فقط:

- I will (shall) wait for you at the airport. - Ali will buy a camera tomorrow.

NEGATION

- Subj. فاعل + Will not (won't) / shall not (shan't) + inf. ...

- We won't be ready at six. - Amira won't attend the party.

Yes/No Q.

Will / shall + Subj. فاعل + inf..... ?

- Will you wait for the bus ?

- Yes. I will (wait for the bus). No, I won't (wait for the bus).

' Wh. ' Q.

- Q.W. + Will / shall + Subj. فاعل + inf..... ?

- When will they move to their new house? - Where will the meeting be held ?

- يتكون المستقبل البسيط المبني للمجهول من:

Passive

Obj. المفعول + Will / shall + be + P.P.....

- A camera will be bought (by Ali) tomorrow.

يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع كلمات مثل:

Next (year / month / week / Friday.....) / in the future / soon / tomorrow / this time (next week / tomorrow.....) / in (a year, month, week.....)

- ويستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع (If) في الحالة الأولى :

- If you win the race, I'll be very happy for you.

Uses of Will

1- التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية:

- She'll be sixteen tomorrow.

- My mum will be very old in twenty years.

2 - التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة عدم وجود دليل غالبا مع:

I expect ... / I'm sure ... / I feel sure ... / I think ... / I don't think ... / I believe .. / Perhaps / I wonder ... / probably / I suppose ... / I hope

- I expect she will get married soon.

- She'll probably leave early today.

- We don't think they will help us.

- I wonder when you will buy the computer.

3 - اتخاذ قرار سريع بعمل شيء ما :-

- We'll have a cold drink.

- I'll buy this CD.

4- عند عرض عمل شيء او تقديم خدمة ما:

- I'll wash the dishes.

- I'll fix the car for you.

5 - عندما نطلب من شخص عمل شيء :-

- Will you help me carry this bag, please?

- I hope you will look after the baby.

6 - الترتيب لعمل شيء وقت الحديث دون تخطيط مسبق:

- I and you will meet this evening.

7 - عمل الوعود والتهديدات:

- I'll buy you a computer when you pass the final exam.

- You won't get your prize if you come late.

Uses of Shall

- 1 - يمكن استخدام (shall) بدلا من (will) مع (I / We) للتعبير عن المستقبل البسيط :
 - I / We shall go shopping this afternoon. - I / We shall spend the weekend in the country.
- 2 - تستخدم (shall) ايضا في تكوين الاقتراح :
 - Shall we meet you at the corner?
- 3 - يمكن استخدام (shall) في تقديم عرض :
 - Shall I help you with the cooking? - Shall we clean the kitchen for you?
- 4 - (في السؤال المذيل)
 - will not → won't - Shall not → shan't
 - We shall spend the weekend in the country, shan't we?

2 - Be + going to + inf.

- Form** - Subj. الفاعل + am / is / are + going to + inf.....
 - We are going to play tennis. - I'm going to make some coffee.
- Negation** - Subj. الفاعل + am not / is not (isn't) / are not (aren't) + going to + inf....
 - They aren't going to watch my wedding video.
- Yes/No Q.** - Am/ Is/ Are + Subj. الفاعل + going to + inf.....?
 - Is she going to attend the meeting? -Yes, she is (going to attend the meeting).
 - No, she isn't (going to attend the meeting).
- 'Wh-'O** - Q.W. + am / is / are + Subj. الفاعل + going to + inf..... ?
 - Where are you going to spend the summer holiday?
- Passive** - Obj. المفعول + am/ is/ are + going to + be + P.P.....
 - Tennis is going to be played (by us).

- تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن نية أو عمل مخطط له قبل لحظة الحديث ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

Intend / intention / plan / have ... in mind

- We have plans to replace our old car with a new one.
 = We are going to replace our old car with a new one.

- التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة وجود دليل مع:

I expect ... / I'm sure ... / I feel sure ... / I think ... / I don't think ... / I believe ... / Perhaps / I wonder ... / I suppose ...

- I think it's going to rain as the sky seems very cloudy.

- و تستخدم ايضا للتعبير عما سيحدث في المستقبل اذا كان هناك قرار مسبق ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

decided / have decided / made a decision / made up ... mind

- They are going to go shopping. They have decided.

- و تستخدم ايضا للتعبير عن أشياء علي وشك الحدوث:

- Watch out! You are going to fall.

- كما يستخدم الماضي من هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن نية كانت موجودة لعمل شيء لم يحدث في الماضي:

- I was going to take the six o'clock train, but I got up late.

- لاحظ تساوي الصيغ التالية في بعض وليس كل الاحوال:-

- - Subj. الفاعل + am / is / are + going to + inf.....
 → = Subj. الفاعل + intend / plan to + inf.....
 → = Subj. الفاعل + have the intention to + inf.....
 → = Subj. الفاعل + be about to + inf.....

- We are going to play tennis. = We intend to play tennis.
 = we have the intention to play tennis.
 - Be careful! You are going to fall. - - Be careful! You are about to fall.

3- The present Continuous for Future Arrangements

نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن مستقبل عندما نتحدث عن ترتيبات لوقت معين في المستقبل ولا بد أن يكون الفاعل عاقل ولا بد من وجود تعبير زمني يدل على المستقبل:

- 1 - استخدام المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل في حالة وجود ترتيبات مسبقة ، و يدل على ذلك كلمات مثل :
arranged / have arranged / made arrangements / prepared / have prepared / made preparations
- He has arranged everything. He's spending his holiday in Paris.
- I have booked two tickets. I'm traveling to Spain with my sister tomorrow.
- 2 - استخدام المضارع المستمر لوصف ترتيبات شخصية مثل الأنشطة الإجتماعية :
- I'm arriving at Luxor next week.
- We're flying to France in three weeks.
- لاحظ أنه يجب استخدام كلمة زمنية لكي نجعل المضارع المستمر مستقبلي.
- I'm meeting him for lunch tomorrow.
- Where are you traveling next summer? - I'm traveling to London.
- كثيرا ما نستخدم هذه الصيغة مع come و go ومع أفعال مثل see - stay - visit - meet
- I'm meeting them on Saturday.
- They're going tomorrow.
- لاحظ أن المستقبل في هذه الحالة ليس فقط مستقبلي قريب ولكن من الممكن أن نقول :
- He's coming back in ten years.
- We're going back to the states in three years.
- لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية من حفلات واعياد ميلاد وغيرها تستلزم ترتيبات ، لذا يستخدم معها المضارعا لمستمر :
- He's getting married next Friday.
- We're going back to the states in three years.
- لاحظ كذلك أن الأنشطة التي تقوم بها المؤسسات تستلزم ترتيبات ، لذا يستخدم معها المضارعا لمستمر :
- Our school is taking part in the sports competition next year.
- This company is sending a delegation to the conference next week.
- الأفعال التي لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة لا تستخدم في المضارع المستمر كمستقبل
- لاحظ ما يلي :
- Are you doing anything tonight? - Yes, I'm playing tennis.
- Are you taking a holiday this year? - Yes, we have just arranged a holiday.
- We're spending ten days in Spain.

4- The present Simple for the Future

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل (و يرتبط ذلك بجداول المواعيد الثابتة الخاصة مثلا بوسائل المواصلات و المسرح و السينما و المدرسةالخ):

- Your train leaves at 6 am tomorrow morning.
- The night programme of Renaissance cinema starts at 12am.
- كما يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل بعد أدوات الربط الزمنية و أدوات الشرط و بعض الروابط الأخرى:
- When I get up, I'll phone you. - If I meet Ali, I will invite him to my birthday party.

5-The future continuous المستقبل المستمر

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا في وقت معين في المستقبل:-

- Form Subj. فاعل + will / shall + be + v.ing.....
- Ali : I'd like to invite you to my birthday party at five o'clock tomorrow?
 - Ahmed : Sorry, I'll be helping my grandpa at the garage.
 - يستخدم للتعبير خطط الآخرين (خاصة عندما نريد شيئا من احد):
 - Will you be using your dictionary tomorrow? - No, you can borrow it.
 - يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث من المرجح حدوثه في وقت معين في المستقبل:
 - I'll be staying up late tomorrow night preparing for the English exam.
 - يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمرا في المستقبل عندما سيقع حدث اخر:-
 - We will be watching the football match when my father comes home from work.

6- The Future Perfect المستقبل التام

- Form - Subj. فاعل + will / shall + have + P.P.
- يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهى او تم في وقت معين في المستقبل:-
- They will have finished the English course in two months' time.
 - We will have built our new house by April next year.

- يستخدم المستقبل التام مع تعبيرات زمنية مثل:

- In (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes' /.....) time
- By next time (في المرة القادمة / by next Monday / by then حينئذ etc.)
- Before (next time / four o'clock / tomorrow morning / next Monday.... etc.)
- This time (tomorrow/ next Monday / next week etc.)

لتغيير درجة اليقين: (will) بدلا من (may / might) - يمكن استخدام

- My father may have arrived from Aswan by this time tomorrow. I'm not sure.
- By 2050, people might have built houses on the moon.

7- The Future Perfect continuous المستمر

Form

Subj. + will / shall + have + been + v.ing

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يستمر حتي وقت معين او حتي وقوع حدث آخر في المستقبل:-

- You will have been waiting for more than two hours when her plane finally arrives.
- She is going to have been working at that company for three years when it finally closes.
- James will have been teaching at the university for more than a year by the time he leaves for Asia.

يستخدم للتعبير عن السبب او النتيجة المترتبة علي حدث سوف يقع في المستقبل:-

- Ibraheem will be tired when he gets home because he will have been jogging for over an hour.
- Eman's English will be perfect when she returns to Egypt because she will have been studying English in the United States for over two years.

- يمكن استخدام (be+going to) لتؤدي نفس المعني تقريبا بدلا من (will)

- Eman's English will be perfect when she returns to Egypt because she is going to have been studying English in the United States for over two years.
- You are going to have been waiting for more than two hours when her plane finally arrives.

Notice the following sentences.

1. Are you going to visit your aunt? - Yes, I'm visiting her on Monday.
2. The doorbell is ringing. I'll who is there.
3. What are your plans for the summer holiday? - I'm traveling to France.
4. What is the weather forecast for the next three days? - It's going to be very hot.
5. Would you like tea or coffee? - I think I'll have coffee.

8- Time Conjunctions استخدام الروابط الزمنية مع المستقبل

- | | | | | |
|---|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|---|---|
| → | After/As soon as/the moment | حدث أول مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام | → | مستقبل |
| → | = Before/When / By the time | حدث ثان مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام | → | مستقبل |
| → | = | حدث ثان مستقبل بسيط منفى غالبا | → | حدث أول مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام + till /until |

- Before she types the letters, she will send the e-mails.
- = After she sends the e-mails, she will type the letter.
- = She won't send the e-mails until she types the letter.

- لاحظ أنه بدلا من المستقبل يمكن أحيانا استخدام فعل أمر :

- After you feed the baby, please, put him to his bed.
- Don't leave until you have typed all the letters.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer:

1. people say that in 2020, computers..... really small.
a) are going to be b) will be c) are being d) going to be
2. Take this medicine, and then you.....a lot better.
a) will feel b) are going to feel c) are feeling d) going to feel

3. He hasn't studied hard. I'm sure he.....his exams.
a) will pass b) won't pass c) is passing d) isn't going to pass
4. My father is almost sixty. He.....next month.
a) is retiring b) will retire c) may retire d) is going to retire
5. I feel awful! I think I.....sick.
a) will be b) am going to be c) may be d) must be
6. Do you think it.....?
a) is raining b) will rain c) is going to rain d) will have rained
7. Look out. A car.....you.
a) will hit b) may hit c) is hitting d) is going to hit
8. There are a lot of clouds in the sky. It
a) is going to rain b) rains c) will rain d) is raining
9. I.....to the airport this afternoon so can I give you a lift?
a) am driving b) will drive c) will have driven d) may drive
10. I.....the new teacher on Friday.
a) meet b) am meeting c) 've met d) are going to meet
11. Mary..... to her new house next Tuesday.
a) moved b) is moving c) has moved d) move
12. The of the castle At midday.
a) begin b) begins c) will begin d) is going to begin
13. me to the match ,Dad?
a- will you take b) Do you take c) Are you taking d) Are you going to take
14. She will watch TV as soon as she her homework
a) will finish b) is finishing c) is going to finish d) finishes
15. I think Brazil the next world cup.
a) wins b) is winning c) is going to win d) will win
16. Sama.....sixteen next week.
a) will be b) is c) is going to be d) is being
17. The train.....the station
a) is leaving b) leaves c) going to leave d) has left
18. She will visit her aunt when she a) will return
a) will return b) returns c) is returning d) is going to return
19. I.....the manager of the
a) meet b) am meeting c) have met d) will be met
20. Look! He off his bicycle.
a) will fall b) is going to fall c) falls d) had fallen
21. We...to the theatre this evening and I'm really looking forward to it.
a) are going b) will go c) will have gone d) go
22. Students will be learning at home.....2050.
a) with b) on c) at d) by
23. I.....hopping this afternoon so can buy you anything?
a) am going b) will go c) am going to go d) have gone
24. I.....to Paris at six o'clock tomorrow I've arranged hat.
a) will travel b) may travel c) am going to travel d) am travelling
25. The train.....at the station at 7 o'clock tomorrow,
a) arrives b) is going to arrive c) has arrived d) is arriving
26. John..... to dinner tonight.
a) comes b) has come c) is coming d) going to come
27. The bus.....at four fifty
a) leave b) leaves c) will leave d) is leaving
28. Imedicine. I want to be an actor now.
a) won't study b) 'm not going to study c) 'm not studying d) may not study
29. My English lesson at four o'clock this afternoon.
a- is stating b- starts c- has been starting d- start
30. It's arranged. We to the Red Sea this summer.
a- will go b- go c- are going d- may go
31. I expect that Al-Ahly the league. They have the best players and trainer in Egypt.

	<i>a-win</i>	<i>b- are going to win</i>	<i>c- will win</i>	<i>d-are winning</i>
32.I think my cousinengineering. He is very clever at Maths.	<i>a-will study</i>	<i>b-studies</i>	<i>c-going to study</i>	<i>d-would study</i>
33.The launch of the campaign at 9.50 tomorrow.	<i>a-is being</i>	<i>b-are being</i>	<i>c-is</i>	<i>d-was</i>
34.I can't meet you this afternoon. I the shopping.	<i>a-am doing</i>	<i>b-do</i>	<i>c-have done</i>	<i>d-may do</i>
35.My train at 11 o'clock tomorrow.	<i>a-is leaving</i>	<i>b-shall leave</i>	<i>c-leave</i>	<i>d-leaves</i>
36.I am studying medicine. I a doctor.	<i>a- am going to be</i>	<i>b-be</i>	<i>c-am being</i>	<i>d-may be</i>
37.Somebody is knocking on the door. I and open it.	<i>a-am going</i>	<i>b-will go</i>	<i>c-have gone</i>	<i>d-go</i>
38.Ahmed to England next Sunday. Everything is arranged.	<i>a-is flying</i>	<i>b-flies</i>	<i>c-fly</i>	<i>d-would fly</i>
39. Mohamed is driving at breakneck speed. He an accident.	<i>a- is going to have</i>	<i>b-would have</i>	<i>c-has</i>	<i>d-is having</i>
40.Watch out! You the glasses.	<i>a- are going to drop</i>	<i>b-drop</i>	<i>c-are dropping</i>	<i>d-would drop</i>
41.....help me with this heavy bag, please?	<i>a- Are you going to</i>	<i>b- Will you</i>	<i>c-Do you</i>	<i>d-Should you</i>
42.I 25 next Monday.	<i>a-am going to be</i>	<i>b-will be</i>	<i>c-am being</i>	<i>d-be</i>
43.Look at those black clouds. It.....	<i>a- is going to rain</i>	<i>b-is raining</i>	<i>c- rains</i>	<i>d- isn't raining</i>
44.Be careful! You your coffee.	<i>a- are going to spill</i>	<i>b-are spilling</i>	<i>c- will spill</i>	<i>d-spill</i>
45.We.....a new car, we have prepared everything.	<i>a)will buy</i>	<i>b) are going to buy</i>	<i>c) are buying</i>	<i>d) buy</i>
46.They arranged everything for the journey, they-----tomorrow .	<i>a) leave</i>	<i>b) are leaving</i>	<i>c) are going to leave</i>	<i>d) will leave</i>
47.According to the timetable the nest bus -----at 10 am.	<i>a) will move</i>	<i>b) moves</i>	<i>c)is going to move</i>	<i>d) is moving</i>
48.I think she-----he next exam.	<i>a) will pass</i>	<i>b) is going to pass</i>	<i>c) is passing</i>	<i>d) passes</i>
49.Don't be late for the cinema, the film-----at 9 as usual.	<i>a)will start</i>	<i>b) starts</i>	<i>c) is starting</i>	<i>d) is going to start.</i>
50.He-----me the details after he meets the boss.	<i>a) tells</i>	<i>b) will tell</i>	<i>c) is going to tell</i>	<i>d) is telling</i>
51.That's the phone. I..... it.	<i>a-answer</i>	<i>b- am answering</i>	<i>c - would answer</i>	<i>d - will answer</i>
52.I think my cousin engineering. He is very clever at Maths.	<i>a-will study</i>	<i>b - studies</i>	<i>c- going to study</i>	<i>d - would study</i>
53.My German lesson at four o'clock this afternoon.	<i>a-is stating</i>	<i>b- starts</i>	<i>c- has been starting</i>	<i>d - start</i>
54.We probably be there for two weeks.	<i>a-will</i>	<i>b - may</i>	<i>c- are going to</i>	<i>d - are</i>
55.I can't meet you this afternoon. I the shopping.	<i>a-am doing</i>	<i>b- do</i>	<i>c - have done</i>	<i>d- may do</i>
56.My plane at 10 o'clock tomorrow.	<i>a-is leaving</i>	<i>b- shall leave</i>	<i>c- leave</i>	<i>d- leaves</i>
57.I am studying medicine. I a doctor.	<i>a-may be</i>	<i>b- am going to be</i>	<i>c - am being</i>	<i>d - be</i>
58.I expect that he the match.	<i>a-wins</i>	<i>b- will win</i>	<i>c- is going to win</i>	<i>d- is winning</i>
59.Somebody is knocking on the door. I and open it.	<i>a- am going</i>	<i>b- will go</i>	<i>c- have gone</i>	<i>d- go</i>

60. She to Spain next Monday. Everything is arranged.
a-is flying b – flies c– fly d – would fly
61. What are your plans for tomorrow? – I tennis with a friend.
a-am going to play b– play c– have played d– shouldn't play
62. Watch out! You the glasses.
a-are dropping b– drop c – are going to drop d– would drop
63. Don't worry. I you the money you need.
a-lend b– am lending c– will lend d– should lend
64. It's arranged. We to the Red Sea this summer.
a-will go b – go c– are going d– may go
65. I think you very good at squash.
a-will be b- is going to be c- is being d– will
66. A: I am going on holiday tomorrow. B: I'm sure you it.
a-are going to enjoy b- are enjoying c- enjoy d- will enjoy
67. A: What are you doing at the weekend? B: I expect I some time with my friends.
a-am going to spend b- am Spending c -Will spend d–spend
68. I think the weather in England cold and rainy.
a- will be b- is going to be c- is being d- shall be
69. There's not a cloud in the sky- it another very sunny day.
a-is going to be b - are being c - are going be d - will be
70. A: This year I go swimming every day. B: That's a good idea. You will get very fit.
a-am going to b- am going c- will d- will be going
71. Don't pick up the phone. I it.
a-answer b-am answering c-will answer d-am going to answer
72. I if I don't get a pay rise.
a-'ll resign b – resign c - am resigning d- would resign
73. After I have studied, I TV.
a- am going to watch b- will watch c– watch d- am watching
74. The film at 7.30.
a- would start b- starts c- is starting d- is started
75. We won't start the meeting until you
a-arrive b- had arrived c- will arrive d– arrives .
76. He to Aswan tomorrow. He's got his ticket
a-'s traveling b–travels c -'d travel d -'ll travel
77. I the car for you.
a-clean b- am cleaning c- have been cleaning d- 'll clean
78. I to the airport at 4 o'clock tomorrow.
a-will have driven b–am going to drive c-'ll be driving d–will drive
79. Would you like fish or chicken? - I think I chicken.
a-'ll have b-am having c- am going to have d- have
80. Are you tennis after school today?
a-plays b– played c- playing d-play

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. After he is seeing the film, he will go to bed.
2. Ahmed study languages at university next year as he intends to.
3. As soon as he is going to finish work, he will go to bed.
4. As soon as he meet his friend, he will go to the theatre.
5. As soon as he will finish the job, he will go to the theatre.
6. Before she cleans the house, she is doing the shopping.
7. Can she intend to study medicine in the USA?
8. Do you play tennis next Friday?
9. He is going to answer the phone as it has been ringing for a long time.
10. He reading the novel tomorrow.
11. He travel to Paris tomorrow. He's got the ticket.
12. He will watch TV after he is going to do his homework.
13. I am buying a car when I save the money.
14. I do my homework at 8 o'clock tomorrow.
15. I don't want to do this homework now but I think I do it tomorrow in stead.

16. I going to London next summer.
17. I hope you are going to finish your work in time.
18. I leave for home now.
19. I want to visit Paris next year so I learn French next term11.
20. I'm going certainly to travel to Paris next Friday.
21. I've flown to London next Sunday.
22. I've missed the bus, so I walk home.
23. I've spent the next summer holiday in Alexandria.
24. In a recent experience, scientists showed that birds can cooperate on complex jobs.
25. It's arranged that he buy new furniture next month.
26. Look out! A bus is hitting you.
27. My computer's old, so my dad buys me a new one for my birthday.
28. My eldest daughter would be 22 next June.
29. My sister is going to be 11 years old next week.
30. Next week we see the match .We've bought the tickets
31. She going to buy a car next week.
32. She intends to visiting her aunt next Friday.
33. She is gone to finish her work early today.
34. She leaves when the meeting ends.
35. She won't go shopping when she has dusted the furniture.
36. The government has carried out the project next year.
37. The next plane will arrive at 3.

Test 4

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to the following situations:

1. Someone asks your opinion about the weather. What do you say?
2. Someone asks you about your plans for your next holiday. What do you say?
3. Someone asks what you want to study at university. What do you say?
4. Your friend asks you why you didn't come to his birthday party. What do you say?

2-Say where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

- 1- A : Do you like your tea with milk and sugar? B : Yes, please.
 A : OK, Sir . Anything else? B : No, thanks.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 2- A : How can I help you ? B : I would like a pair of shoes. A : What size? B : 44.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3- Choose the correct answer:

1. Sometimes companies accept applicants with no and give them full training later.
a) experiment b) experience c) expression d) explanation
2. He found himself in a difficult when he lost his money.
a) situation b) state c) station d) status
3. No progress will be achieved unless all citizens for the good of their country.
a) commemorate b) cooperate c) decorate d) demonstrate
4. Surgeons work with a of doctors and nurses to help patients.
a) package b) packet c) pocket d) team
5. Boxing and wrestling are examples of sports.
a) individual b) team c) group d) single
6. My aunt is amazing. She worked full-time as a doctor and up five children.
a) raised b) took c) sent d) brought
7. The Olympic Games are a festival which is held every four years.

- a) *sports* b) *sport* c) *sport's* d) *sports'*
8. We should show towards other people and respect their opinions.
- a) *cruelty* b) *tolerance* c) *intolerance* d) *hatred*
9. Next Saturday I'm going my aunt.
- a) *for visit* b) *visit* c) *to visit* d) *to visiting*
10. There's a history programme on TV tonight. I think you it.
- a) *are enjoying* b) *enjoy* c) *are going to enjoy* d) *will enjoy*
11. I expect he his exams easily.
- a) *will pass* b) *passes* c) *is passing* d) *is going to pass*
12. She to London next spring.
- a) *travels* b) *traveled* c) *is traveling* d) *has travelled*
13. My sister at six tomorrow morning.
- a) *arrives* b) *arrived* c) *has arrived* d) *was arrived*
14. The wind is getting stronger. There a thunderstorm.
- a) *would be* b) *might be* c) *is going to be* d) *shall be*
15. You have had a very tiring day. I'm sure you feel better after a good night's sleep.
- a) *will* b) *can't* c) *have been* d) *may not*
16. The earth is getting very crowded. Perhaps one day people live on the moon.
- a) *are going* b) *shall* c) *will* d) *should have*

4- Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. We have prepared everything, we will leave tomorrow.
2. We will have lunch as soon as my father will come back.
3. You should cooperate with other players to score a lot of ends.
4. What could go false if a nurse refused to help a doctor?
5. What sports can you make?
6. Why do you think lions fish in packs?

C- Reading Comprehension

Read the passage and answer the questions:

Sport is an important part of today's society and plays a large role in people's lives. From a social standpoint, sport plays a positive role in uniting people from different social backgrounds. However, it can divide them, as is often demonstrated by crowd violence at football matches.

Sport is also an important part of every child's schooling, as it plays a big role in their physical and mental development. "It" teaches children how to work as part of a team and cooperate with others, while at the same time improving their physical condition. The only drawback to this is that children who are less able to perform well in sports are likely to feel inadequate in comparison with their more gifted classmates, which may affect their self-confidence.

From an economic point of view, sport can be very profitable as it attracts a lot of advertising . This creates profit for the sporting industry.

A-Answer the following questions:

1. In what way can sport be profitable?
2. How does sport play an important part in education?
3. What does the underlined word 'it' in the third paragraph refer to?

B-Choose the correct answer:

- 4-The children who are likely to feel inadequate are usually.....
- a) good at sport b) experts at sport c) interested in s d) weak in sport
- 5-One drawback of sport at football matches is that.....
- a) it creates profit for the sporting industry b) it often leads to violent actions
- c) it improves the physical condition d) it develops the mental condition

6- Read the passage then answer the questions:

When Abdou went to England, he was looking forward to his first journey by tube, the underground metro in London. He had heard a lot about it from his English friend Tom. However, it was not a great success.

Abdou entered the station at five o'clock in the afternoon. This is a bad time to travel in London because crowds of people go home from work at this hour. He had to join a long queue of people. When his turn came, he had difficulty in making the ticket-man understand the name of the station. The people in the queue began to complain about the delay. However, he got the right ticket and found the platform. He did not manage to get on the first train. But he was able to move nearer to the platform so as to be in a better position to get on the next one. When this came in, Abdou was unable to see the names of the stations where the train stopped. However, he had counted the number of stops so that he knew exactly where to get off.

When the train reached the station, Abdou discovered that he had travelled on a train going on the wrong direction.

Answer the following questions:

- 1- According to the passage, was the journey successful or not? Give three reasons.
- 2- How did Abdou succeed in getting on the second train?
- 3- What does the underlined word "it" refer to?

Choose the correct answer:

- 4- The people in the queue behind Abdou began to complain because
a) They stood in a queue b) The ticket-man could not understand Abdou
c) It was crowded d) Abdou took a long time
- 5- The best title for this passage would be
a) "The complicated metro system" b) "Abdou's bad day"
b) "Means of transportation in London" d) "The disadvantages of the underground metro"

D- The Novel

7) (A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- What is the main problem inside Lilliput?
- 2- Who are the Tramecksan and the Slamecksan? Which group does the King belong to? Which group has more power? Which one is bigger?

(B) Read the following quotation and answer the question:

2. "I understand. Well, I'm certainly ready to help to defend your country from any coming attack."

- A) Who said these words? To whom?
- B) Which attack was the speaker ready to help against?
- C) Why did the king ask Reldresal to tell Gulliver about this problem?

(c) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 1- The person who jumped the highest was given a colored medal by the King.
- 2- Gulliver must promise to walk across roads and not lie down in any fields.

E- Writing

- 8- Write a letter to your English friend Mark telling him that you have just moved into a new house. Describe your new house and say why you like it. You live at 5 at 5 Nile Street, Assiut.

F- Translation

9- A) Translate into Arabic:

To be successful team member, you may need to cooperate with people who are very different from you and who you may not like. To succeed you will have to show tolerance and work with these people.

B) Translate into English:

- لم تكن الحرب ولن تكون أبدا سبيلا إلى حل المنازعات بين الدول.
-التعاون والصبر من أهم الصفات التي تساعد على النجاح مع الآخرين .

Unit 5 - Lord Of the Flies

actor	ممثل	get back	يعود	realize	يدرك
adults	بالغين	gist	جوهر . لب	relationship	علاقة
alone	بمفرده	glasses	نظارة	reply	يرد
arrival	وصول	go hunting	يصطاد	rescue	ينقذ
attack	يهاجم	go out	يخرج	respect	يحترم
belong to	يخص . ينتمي إلى	go well	يتحسن	rules	قواعد
brave	شجاع	group of	مجموعة من	Russia	روسيا
break rules	يكسر القواعد	honest	أمين	sailor	بحار
British	بريطاني	imaginative	خيالي	sensible	حساس
camp	معسكر	including	يشمل	set fire	يشعل نار
capital	رأس مال . عاصمة	leader	قائد	shelter	مأوى . مسكن
capture	يأسر	literature	أدب	shocked	صدم
children	أطفال	look after	يعتني بـ	smoothly	بلطف
coast	ساحل	look for	يبحث عن	split into	يفلق إلى
consist of	يتكون من	lord	سيد	sportsman	رجل رياضي
crash	يحطم	make fire	يشعل نار	steal	يسرق
Crete island	جزيرة كريت	Mediterranean	البحر المتوسط	stop from	يتوقف عن
cruel	قاسي	navy	بحرية	successful	ناجح
departure	رحيل	novel	رواية	The Amazon	الأمزون
desert island	جزيرة مهجورة	on island	على الجزيرة	the best	الأفضل
disagreement	رفض	optimistic	متفائل	The Nile	النيل
discuss	يناقش	organize	ينظم	theatre	مسرح
during	أثناء	Pacific ocean	المحيط الهادي	thought	فكر
each other	بعضهم البعض	paint	يدهن	tolerant	متسامح
escape from	يهرب من	passing ship	سفينة مارة	University	جامعة
explore	يستكشف	pessimistic	متشائم	violent	عنيف
express	يعبر	poem	قصيدة	wild animal	حيوان برى (متوحش)
fighting	شجار / قتال	problems	مشكلة	wind	الرياح
flies	الذباب	programme	برنامج	world war	حرب عالمية
frightened of	خائف من	promise	يعد	write about	يكتي عن
frightening	مخيف	protection	حماية	writer	كاتب

Important Vocabulary

bring about	يحدث	foreign investors	المستثمرون الأجانب
catch up with = keep up with	يساير / يواكب	Lay the foundation of	يضع أساس
endanger	يعرض للخطر	participation	المشاركة
enhance	يعزز / يدعم	rural areas	المناطق الريفية
enrich	يثري	take responsibility for	يتحمل المسؤولية عن
essential	أساسي	tolerance	التسامح

Derivatives

verb		Noun		Adjective	
arrive	يصل	arrival	وصول		
cooperate	يتعاون	cooperation	تعاون	cooperative	تعاوني / متعاون
explore	يستكشف	exploration	استكشاف		
frighten	يخيف	fright	الخوف	Frightening Frightened	مخيف خائف
lead	يقود / يؤدي الي	leader	قائد	leading	بارز / قيادي
predict	يتنبأ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	يمكن التنبؤ

Expressions

compare .. with	يقارن .. بـ	plan for the future	يخطط للمستقبل
cruel to	قاسي علي	popular with	محبوب لدي
escape from	يهرب من	protect from/against	يحمي من
get on with	يكون علي علاقة طيبة مع	set fire to	يشعل النار في
give up	يتخلي عن	shoot down a plane	يسقط طائرة
have advice for	لديه نصيحة لـ	signal to	يعطي إشارة لـ
look after	يعتني بـ	split into	ينقسم إلي
manage to = succeed	يتمكن من	the fire goes out	تتطفئ النيران
on the island	علي الجزيرة	under control	تحت السيطرة

Words & antonyms كلمات وعكسها

agreement	اتفاق	disagreement	خلاف
brave	شجاع	cowardly	جبان
calm	هادئ	noisy	مثير لضوضاء
carefully	بغناية	carelessly	بإهمال
honest	أمين	dishonest	غير أمين
include	يشمل	exclude	يستبعد
kind	عطوف	cruel	قاسي
patient	صبور	impatient	عديم الصبر
pessimism	التشاؤم	optimism	التفاؤل
pessimistic	متشائم	optimistic	متفائل
right	يمين	left	شمال
right	صحيح	wrong	خاطيء

Definitions

frightening	- Something that makes you feel afraid.	مخيف
capture	- To catch someone or something in order to keep them.	يأسر / يقبض علي
cruel	- to be unkind and hurt people or animals	قاسي
navy	- Sailors and ships a country has for fighting at sea.	البحرية
optimistic	- expecting good news, good things or good events.	متفائل
pessimistic	- expecting bad news, bad things or bad events.	متشائم
shelter	-a place that protects people from weather.	مأوي
shocked	- Upset and very surprised.	مصدوم
split	- divide into groups.	ينقسم / ينشط
steal	- To take something that does not belong to you.	يسرق
Violent	- wanting to hurt people.	عنيف

Language Notes

- agree to + inf. / n يوافق علي - The manager agreed to my suggestion. - I agreed to go with him.
 - agree on يتفق علي شيء -
 - The members of the team agreed on the plan. - My cousins and I don't agree on very much.
 - agree with (someone / something)
 - I agree with you. English is not easy this year. -No one agrees with neglecting children.
 - agree that + جملة - I agree that he must be punished.
 -Couldn't agree more = -agree completely يوافق تماما
 A: I think Brazil will win the World Cup. B: I can't agree more. أوافق تماما
 -Couldn't agree less = - disagree completely لا يوافق علي الإطلاق
 A: I think Sobhy is the best goal keeper in Egypt. - B: I can't agree less.

-Subj. فاعل+make + مفعول + inf.....

= obj. + المفعول (be)+made to +inf.....

make + مفعول + صفة

- His jokes made us laugh.

- We were made to laugh.

- His words made me happy.

- steal يسرق شئ

-The thief stole my uncle's money.

- rob يسرق مكان

-A gang of robbers robbed the bank last night.

- rob somebody of something

-The thieves robbed me of my wallet.

- لاحظ أن الكلمات الآتية يستخدم معها الفعل مفرد و نشير إليها بضمير جمع:

-Someone /somebody/everyone/everybody/no one/ nobody.....etc.

-Everyone has their own lives.

- Nobody admires their photos.

- make fire يشعل نار

-I used matches to make fire.

- set fire to يشعل نار في

-He sets fire to the island to stop them from escaping.

- See يرى - يبصر

-We can't see well with one eye.

- See = understand يفهم

- Do you see how the fire started ?

-See = think about

-The manager may see your presents as a sort of bribe. رشوة

- See (someone) off يودع

- We saw my father off at the airport.

- watch يشاهد / يراقب

-I watch TV at night.

- She was watching the flying birds.

- Watch يحرس

- It is sure that God watches over us.

- Know + how to + inf... يعرف كيف يفعل

-I don't know how to make a cake.

- show + how to + inf.... يعرف كيف يفعل

-Mum showed me how to make the cake.

- learn يتعلم - teach يعلم + (to + inf) أو (how to + inf)

- I learned (how)to make a cake. - Mum taught me(how)to make a cake.

- such (a/an) + صفة + اسم

- It is such a boring film.

- He read about such strange sea animals.

- spell - spelled / spelt يتهجى

-Mariam could spell her name in English when she was three.

- spill - spilt يسكب

-The baby spilt juice on his jacket.

- split - split ينشطر

- When the gunpowder exploded, the rock split into small stones.

- تستخدم (else) بعد الكلمات التي تبدأ بـ (some - no- every-any) وتنتهي بالكلمات (where - body-thing- one) مثل:

Someone else/ everyone else / something else / nothing else.....

- I didn't break the window.

- Somebody else must have broken it.

- وتستخدم else بعد ادوات الاستفهام what / who / why / where

-Do you need anything else?

-What else did he buy?

عند إضافة حرف (s) الي السنة نقصد بها فترة عشر سنوات أي عقد decade:

- In the 1990s = from 1990 to 1999

- include

يحتوي على جزء أو أكثر من الأجزاء (المكونات) و ليس كل المكونات

-The English course includes six short stories

- Contain يحتوي على شئ بداخله (على كل)

- His bag contains some books.

- comprise = is comprised of = is composed of = consist of يتكون من كل المكونات الأساسية

My flat consists of(is composed of/ comprises)two bedrooms, a hall, a kitchen and a bathroom.

- Enclose يرفق - يحيط

- She enclosed her photo with the letter.

- Our school is enclosed by tall trees.

الصفات المنتهية بـ ed تعبر عن أشخاص أما الصفات المنتهية بـ ing تعبر عن أشياء

- Aya looks very tired today.

- Studying is a very tiring job.

- I'm interested in reading short stories.

- This film is really interesting.

ويمكن أن تأتي الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) مع العاقل إذا كان الشخص هو الذي يسبب هذه الصفة.

She is boring. No one likes her.

- لاحظ أن (lots of / a lot of / plenty) of تستخدم في الإثبات مع الكلمات التي تعد و الكلمات التي لا تعد و تستخدم (a great deal of) مع الكلمات التي لا تعد فقط:

- Mum bought a lot of (a great deal of) food.

- We need a lot of workers.

- تستخدم much في السؤال و النفي مع الكلمات التي لا تعد:

- I don't need much money.

- Do you drink much juice?

- تستخدم many في السؤال و النفي مع الكلمات التي تعد:

- I couldn't visit many places.

- Did you invite many friends to the party?

- تستخدم many/ much في الإثبات إذا جاء قبلهما إحدى الكلمات الآتية too/ so / very

- You have put so much salt in the soup.

- Other صفة يتبعها جمع

- I will invite other friends.

- another صفة يتبعها اسم مفرد

- I will have another cup of tea .

- one of يقع بعدها اسم جمع والفعل مفرد

- One of my neighbours was ill .

others تشير الى جمع ولا يأتي بعدها اسم

- Some people work hard, others are lazy.

- Coast ساحل

- Alexandria is on the north coast of Egypt.

- Shore شاطئ البحر (البحيرة)

- I was watching some boats on the shore of the sea.

- Beach البلاج (الجزء الرملي عند حافة البحر)

- The children played happily on the beach.

- Bank ضفة النهر أو القناة

- I enjoy walking along the western bank of Nile River.

- alone بمفرده (شئ مادي)

- She cleaned the kitchen alone.

- Lonely وحيدا (يشعر بالوحدة)

- She feels lonely in her new flat.

- listen to ينصت إلي (سماع بقصد)

- I always listen to the news on the radio .

- Hear يسمع (سماع عارض - بدون قصد)

- I heard the baby crying .

- hear from يتلقى رسالة من

- I haven't heard from Ali lately.

- hear of يسمع أخبار عن - يعرف بوجود شخص أو شئ

- He disappeared and no one heard of him again.

- hear about يسمع - يتلقى معلومات عن

- You will hear about new achievements soon.

- Promise to+ inf..... = make a promise to+inf..... يوعد

- He promised to help me with my homework.

= He made a promise to help me with my homework.

- Decide to+ inf.... = make a decision to+inf..... يقرر

- I decided to move to a new flat.

= I made a decision to move to a new flat.

- Life الحياة بصفة عامة (لا تجمع)

- Life is very difficult in hot countries.

- A life تستخدم عندما نتحدث عن نوع معين من الحياة

- She started a new life in Canada.

- The life تستخدم عادة عند الحديث عن حياة شخص ما

- I read an article about the life of Nasser.

- Poetry (فن الشعر)

- Ahmed Shawky is the prince of modern Arab poetry.

- Prose نثر

- Prose is not as effective as poetry..

Communication Skills

Expressing Rules التعبير عن القواعد الواجب اتباعها

- You must / You must not...	- You must not speak in the mosque.
- Everyone must always/ should always...	- Everyone must always follow the school rules.
- Remember to .../ Don't forget to ...	- Remember to buy the newspaper.
- Don't .. / Never ...	- Never get close to dogs.

Exercises

Respond to each of the following situation:

51. A friend drives his car very fast. What do you say?
52. A friend always writes on the walls of the classroom. What do you say?
53. Someone doesn't stop their car when the traffic lights are red.
54. You and a group of friends are discussing what makes a good friend.
55. You ask your friend about his opinion of "The Lord of the Flies"
56. Your brother comes home too late. What do you say?

where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

- 1- A: How much is that book, please? B: It's 45 pounds.
 A: Here you are. B: And here is the change. Thank you.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 2- A: Would you like something else, sir? B: No, thank you.
 A: Here is your bill, sir. I hope you enjoyed your meal.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

Choose the correct answer:

1. He never tells lies. He is always.....
 a- honest b- patient c- sensible d- tolerant
2. He is accepted to be good and well-behaved by all. He is.....
 a- respected b- imaginative c- sensible d- patient
3. If you were a leader, what rules would you
 a- do b- make c- form d- frame
4. Golding was.....by things he had seen during the war.
 a- thrilled b- admired c- hit d- shocked
5. William Golding was a student.....Oxford University.
 a- at b- in c- on d- into
6. Some people believe that everyone could be cruel.....children.
 a- consisting b- containing c- containing d- enclosing
7. The.....is a person who writes novels or stories.
 a- editor b- photographer c- illustrator d- author
8. Golding found that people could show great.....during the war.
 a- navy b- pessimism c- cruelty d- shock
9. Wherever people go, they.....shelters to protect them from bad weather.
 a- do b- set c- build d- hold
10. The sailors and ships, a country has for fighting at sea are called its...
 a- voyage b- navy c- army d- battle
11. A.....is a place that protects people from bad weather.
 a- shelter b- navy c- cottage d- mansion
12. The tourists wanted to do different things, so they into three groups.
 a- split b- split c- shared d- split
13. The hunters.....the animal and took it to the zoo.
 a- captivated b- captured c- arrested d- held
14. This umbrella will.....you from rain.
 a- save b- rescue c- protect d- stay
15. How long have the boys stayed.....the island?
 a- on b- in c- at d- above
16. The boys ran away crying because the animal was.....
 a- frightened b- afraid c- frightening d- fearing
17. The plane.....near an island.
 a- smashed b- clashed c- crushed d- crashed
18. He is drowning. He wants someone to him.
 a- arrest b- capture c- protect d- rescue
19. The old woman looks.....the children after the death of their mother.

- a- for b- after c- at d- about*
20. He didn't.....that he had made a mistake until he handed in his homework.
a- realize b- recognize c- understand d- say
21. The boys needed a leader to.....their new life on the island.
a- organize b- realize c- promise d- pass
22. The fire went.....because there was not enough wood.
a- off b- up c- away d- out
23. You must not.....It's wrong to take things that do not belong to you.
a- steal b- rob c- pick d- capture
24. It was a very.....match. Some of the players hit each other.
a- violent b- attacking c- surprising d- exciting
25. Why did the boys.....Ralph as their leader?
a- decide b- choose c- intend d- capture
26. The teacher asked the students to split.....four small groups
a- for b- to c- away d- into
27. He can't see well. He needs.....for reading.
a- glass b- a glass c- glasses d- the glass
28. Don't come near that dog or it will.....you.
a- hurt b- attack c- attract d- hit
29. My grandfather loved ships and the sea . He spent five years in the.....
a- navy b- land c- location d- situation
30. He is very fond of Arabic...He has read a lot of poems and novels.
a- identity b- literature c- characteristics d- navy
31. He is very.....He thinks that the world will be better for the next generations.
a- cruel b- optimistic c- pessimistic d- hopeless
32. I don't like him as he is very.....to the pets he keeps.
a- cruel b- hopeless c- pessimistic d- optimistic
33. He is very.....He always believes that bad things will happen in the future.
a- cruel b- hopeless c- pessimistic d- optimistic
34. What did you.....out in the lesson?
a- explore b- find c- discover d- learn
35. When the boys arrived on the island, they a fire.
a- did b- made c- held d- conducted
36. The mad man has.....fire to his house.
a- done b- made c- set d- held
37. The hungry boys were.....for food on the island.
a- watching b- researching c- seeing d- looking
38. The police chained the thief as they were afraid that he might....
a- capture b- escape c- arrest d- run
39. With the..... of their father. the children stopped fighting.
a- arrival b- departure c- leaving d- attract
40. After the fight. a lot of children were
a- attacked b- hurt c- attracted d- bleed
41. What are the most important.....of a good leader?
a- rules b- adjectives c- qualities d- quantities
42. He can make up a lot of interesting stories. He is very
a- brave b- honest c- intelligent d- imaginative
43. It's important for a leader to keep.....in all situations.
a- brave b- calm c- intelligent d- honest

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. A navy is a place that protects people from weather.
2. A thief got into my house and robbed all the money and gold.
3. A violence person is someone who wants to hurt people.
4. An actor is a person who writes novels.
5. First, the boys cooperative with each other.
6. Golding found that people could show great cruel during the war.
7. He is an officer in the navigation. His work is on ships and in the sea.
8. He is very pessimistic as he always expects good news.
9. He promised giving me the books
10. He was the first man to example the land. No one has been there before him.
11. I made fire to the island.
12. I would like to compress my thanks for your kindness.
13. My uncle was in the sailing during the war as he was a good sailor.

14. Ralph is saved by the arrive of a ship.
15. The boys believe there is a frighten animal on the island.
16. The boys chose Ralph as their leading.
17. The boys did a fire so that a ship could see them.
18. The ending of the film was printable. Everybody knew what was going to happen.
19. The first thing they did was to do a shelter to protect themselves from the wind and rain.
20. The lion was frightened so the children cried and ran away
21. The Lord of the Flies were written by William Golding.
22. The man stole Ali of his jacket.
23. There was a disagree between the boys over where to stay.
24. They help you talk through your problems but they don't give you any salutations.
25. They were hungry so they researched for any food to eat.
26. This novel is best than the writer's other novels.
27. Though he was put in a cell the prisoner could get and travel abroad
28. Two men arrested the animal and took it to the zoo.
29. violent means want to help people
30. We shared into four groups to finish the work.
31. Winning the Olympic gold medal was the realize of his life's dream.

Grammar

1- The Definite Article (the)

- تستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية:

1 - عندما يكون الاسم الذي تستخدم قبله واضحا للقاريء او السامع:

- Your mum comes to your bedroom and tells you:
- Make the bed and open the window. (*You know which bed and window your mum is talking about*)

2- قبل الاسم الذي سبق ذكره:

- Ali picked a flower. The flower is colourful.

3- عندما يكون هناك واحد فقط من الشيء:

- The sun / the moon / the sky / the country / the countryside / the ground....etc.

- و لاحظ ايضا:

- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- What is the longest river in the world?
- Go to sea / be at sea = go / be on a voyage (بدون the)
- يذهب في رحلة بحرية (بدون the)
- لكن لاحظ اننا نستخدم (the) عند الاشارة الي البحر كمكان :
- I'd like to live by the sea.
- كلمة (space) عندما تعني الفضاء الكوني لا تأخذ (the) :
- There are millions of stars in space.
- عندما نستخدم (the) قبل كلمة (space) فهي تعني مكان فارغ:
- The space in my room isn't enough for this table.

4- تستخدم (the) قبل الكلمات (theatre/ cinema/radio/office/ internet) ولا نقصد مكان او شيء محدد:

- We went to the cinema last night.
- Do you go to the theatre?
- We listen to the news on the radio.
- عند استخدام كلمة (television) في سياق المشاهدة فلا تأخذ (the):
- We often watch football matches on television.
- عند استخدام كلمة (television) للدلالة علي جهاز التلفزيون تأخذ (the):
- Can you turn on the television?

5- تستخدم (the) قبل اسم مفرد يعد للدلالة علي النوع بوجه عام:

- The giraffe is the tallest animal.
- The rose is my favourite flower.
- يستخدم الاسم الجمع بدون (the) بنفس الطريقة للدلالة علي النوع بوجه عام:
- Giraffes are the tallest animals.
- Roses are my favourite flowers.

6- تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء الاختراعات المفردة للدلالة علي النوع بوجه عام:

- The computer is the most important invention.
- تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء الالات الموسيقية في سياق العزف والاستماع مع أفعال مثل:

- (play / practice/ learn practice / study/ appreciate / listen to)
- Can you play the guitar?
- The piano is my favourite instrument.
- أما عند الحديث عنها علي أنها آلات أو أجهزة فلا تأخذ (the):
- I want to buy a piano.
- She found an old guitar in her grandfather's house.

- 8- تستخدم (the) قبل بعض الصفات التي لا يتبعها اسم لتدل على اسم جمع دائما و تأخذ فعل جمع:
- The rich should help the poor. – He is collecting money for the blind.
- 9- تستخدم (the) قبل بعض صفات الجنسية التالية لتدل على شعب ما بصفة عامة:
- The British / the English / the Irish / the Welsh / the Spanish / the French / the Dutch/ the Swiss
- كما تستخدم (the) بنفس الطريقة قبل صفات الجنسية المنتهية ب (ese) :
 - The Japanese / the Chinese/ the Sudanese..... etc.
 - اما صفات الجنسية الاخرى فيجب ان تجمع بعد (the) لتؤدي نفس المعنى :
 - The Egyptians / the Russians/ the Arabs/ the Scots/ the Turks...etc.
- 10- تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء مجموعات الجزر:
- The Bahamas / the Canaries / the British Isles
 - اما اسماء الجزر المنفردة فلا تأخذ (the) :
 - Sicily/ Bermuda / Crete etc.
- 11- تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء بعض الاقاليم :
- The Middle East / the Far East/ the north of Egypt / the west of Canada....etc.
 - اما عند استخدام الاتجاه كصفة للمكان فلا نستخدم (the) :
 - Northern Egypt / western Canada.....etc.
- 12- تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء السلاسل الجبلية:
- The Rocky Mountains/ the Andes / the Alps.....etc.
 - اما اسماء القمم الجبلية المنفردة فعادة لا تأخذ (the) :
 - Mount Everest/ Kilimanjaro..... etc.
- 13- تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء المحيطات والبحار والانهار والقنوات :
- The Atlantic/ the Pacific Ocean / the Red Sea / the Nile / the Suez Canal.....etc.
- 14- تستخدم (the) قبل الاماكن الجغرافية واسماء الخلجان والغابات مثل
- the Sahara, the Persian Gulf, the Black Forest,
- 15- تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء الاماكن التالية:
- hotels: the Hilton / the Station Hotel
 - restaurants: the Bombay Restaurant / the Chinese restaurant
 - theatres: the National Theatre / the Palace Theatre
 - Cinemas: the Renaissance / the Metro
 - museums: the Egyptian Museum / the British Museum
 - اما اذا كان اي من الاماكن السابقة يسمى على اسم شخص و ينتهي ب(s) الجمع او(s) الملكية فلا يأخذ (the) :
 - McDonalds/ Barclays Bank.....etc.
- 16- تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء الاماكن التي بها (of) :
- The Great Wall of China/ the Bank of England.....etc.
- 17- تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء الصحف :
- The Times/ the Washington Postetc.
- 18- تستخدم (the) قبل الاسماء التي يوجد اتفاق على مدلولها:
- The police / the fire brigade/ the army/ the dentist/ the post office.....etc.
- 19- تستخدم (the) قبل الاسم عندما نقصد الإشارة الى ما يدل عليه الاسم الذي بعدها بالتحديد:
- I like your garden. The flowers are beautiful. (the flowers in your garden)
 - Maha works in a primary school. Yesterday, she took the pupils on a school trip.
- 20- تستخدم (the) قبل صفات التفضيل القصوي :
- The lion the strongest animal. – Gold is the most expensive animals.
- 21- تستخدم (the) مع التعبيرات الزمنية:
- in the (morning / afternoon / evening)
- 22- تستخدم (the) مع تعبيرات معينة:
- at the top of his voice –at the end of.. -in the end
- 23- مع العبارات الدالة على المقارنة:
- The more you practise, the better you get. كلما تدربت أكثر كلما تحسنت .
- 24- قبل أسماء الكتب المقدسة :
- The Quran / The Bible / The Torah
- 25- لاحظ استخدام the (عادة) في الحالات الآتية :
- The state/ the environment / the weather
- 26- قبل الاسم الذي تتبعه عبارة بها ضمير وصل أو المعرف بالإضافة الي معرفة بحرف جر:
- The man who lost his son was very sad. – He opened the door of the room.
- 27- قبل العدد الذي يدل على فترة عشر سنوات و قبل الاعداد الترتيبية:
- The fifties الخمسينيات / the nineties / the (first / second/third.....etc.)
- 28- قبل أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات والألقاب والمناخ .
- The government– the climate - the weather – the press

- لا تستخدم (the) في الحالات التالية -

1- لا تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء الوجبات :

- We have lunch at three o'clock. (not :the lunch)

- لكن عند وصف الوجبة نستخدم (the) :

-The breakfast I ate yesterday was horrible.

2- لا تستخدم (the) قبل الاسم الجمع اذا كنا نقصد المعنى العام :

- Rabbits are nice animals. (not : the rabbits)

3- لا تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء الاماكن التالية اذا كانت تستخدم للغرض الاساسي منها :

- prison / school /university /college / church / hospital / market / court /mosque...etc.

- He went to university . He studies medicine there.

- اما اذا استخدم المكان لغرض اخر فيأخذ (the) :

- Marwa went to the hospital to visit her uncle. (She didn't go there as a patient)

4- غالبا لا تستخدم (the) قبل الكلمات (bed / work / home) :

- He went to bed. - She left work. - I arrived home.

5- لا تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء القارات :

- Asia / Africa / Europe / North America.....etc.

6- لا تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء الدول:

- Egypt / Britain / France / Spain / Germany / Iraq etc.

- اما اذا احتوي اسم الدولة علي كلمات مثل: (Republic/union/kingdom/state/ Fedration...etc.) فهي تأخذ (the)

- The Arab Republic of Egypt / the United Kingdom /

- The United States of America/ The United Arab Emirates - The Kingdom of Saudi Arabia.....etc

- و ايضا اذا كان اسم الدولة جمعا فهو يأخذ (the) :

the Netherlands / the Philipines

- تستخدم (the) قبل اختصارات الدول والاتحادات وكذلك الدول التي بها :

The United Nations(the UN) / The USA /The ARE

7- لا تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء المدن:

- Cairo/ New York / London / Madrid.....etc.

8- لا تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء البحيرات :

- Lake Nassir / Lake Victoria / Lake Manzala.....etc.

- باستثناء البحيرة المكونة من مجموعة من البحيرات مثل (the Great Lakes)

9- لا تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء الشوارع والطرق والميادين و ان كانت توجد استثناءات :

- Piccadilly / Red Square / Broadwayetc.

10- لا تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء الاماكن المركبة اذا كان الاسم الاول فيها يدل علي شخص او مكان :

- Victoria Station/ Buckingham Palace / London Zoo.....etc.

- اما اذا كان الاسم الاول فيها لا يدل علي شخص او مكان فتأخذ (the) :

- the White House /the Royal Palace.....etc.

11- لا تستخدم (the) قبل الاسماء المجردة والاسماء الغير معدودة بمعنى عام:

- sorrow / birth / death / wisdom/money/information/ water.....etc.

- لكن لاحظ اننا نستخدم (the) عند الحديث عن شيء محدد:

- The birth of Malak made them very happy. - This is the information you asked for.

12 - لا تستخدم (the) قبل اسماء المواد (الخامات) :

- wood / wool / metal / milk / iron / plastic / meat.....etc.

13- لا نستخدم (the) قبل فصول السنة و اسماء الشهور و ايام الاسبوع :

- Monday / Friday / January / April/ summer.....etc.

14- لا نستخدم (the) قبل اسماء اللغات

- Arabic/ English / Chinese / Turkish..... etc.

-لاحظ أنه اذا جاءت بعد اسم اللغة كلمة (language) نستخدم (the) :

The English language / the French language

15- لا نستخدم (the) قبل اسماء المواد الدراسية :

- mathematics / biology / political science

16- لاحظ عدم استخدام (the) قبل الألقاب المتبوعة باسم شخص و قبل أسماء الأعياد :

- King Ramses built a lot of temples.

- President Sadat was a great politician.

- I do not go out at Christmas.

- ملحوظة هامة : ليست كل كلمة معرفة بـ الـ في اللغة العربية نستخدم قبلها the في الإنجليزية و لكن يجب استخدام القواعد السابقة:

- Pollution is a dangerous problem.

التلوث مشكلة خطيرة

- Music can be used to cure some diseases.

يمكن أن نستخدم الموسيقى لعلاج بعض الأمراض

- Peace is the dream of all nations.

السلام هو حلم كل الأمم

15. I want to buy.....present for a friend but I don't know what to get him.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

16. I don't think this tie would appeal to him as he doesn't like....ties

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

17. Well, it's.....expensive watch. It costs LE 800.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

18. I like to buy my brother a walkman. That's.....unusual gift.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

19. Have you got.....pocket flashlight that you could lend me?

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

20. Egypt is in..... Africa.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

21. I have never been to USA.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

22.Siwa Oasis is in the Egyptian desert.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

23.Suez Canal links the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

24. What happened to.....flashlight that you bought last week?

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

25. I watch.....TV every day.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

26.Asia is the biggest continent in the world.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

27. He killed his wife and was sent to.....prison.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

28.Nile is the longest river in the world.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

29.Lake Nasser is full of fish.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

30. I am cooking.....dinner now.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

31.Mediterranean Sea has a very serious pollution problem.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

32. Did you know that Anne is learning how to play.....flute?

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

33. Did you see.....boy who we helped yesterday?

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

34. Have you ever climbed.....Mount Everest?

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

35. I am going to.....Vision Cinema with Mohab.

a- an b- a c- the d- no article

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. A MA is a Master of Arts.

2. A more you work, the more problems you get.

3. A rain was falling as I walked home from a visit to my grandma.

4. A Sudan is an African country.

5. All I had for lunch was piece of cake.

6. Are there people on the Mars?

7. Can you give me a water to drink?

8. Do you read a Holy Quran everyday?

9. During sixties, people were interested in music.

10. France is an European country.

11. Gobi is a huge Desert in Asia.

12. Golding was an sailor during the war.

13. Good doctor needs a lot of experience.

14. He is the BBC news reader.

15. He left the hour ago.

16. He sold his car. A car was very bad.

17. He works as the engineer.

18. I go to the school to learn.

19. I like listening to songs on radio.

20. I must go to bank and change some money.
21. I really enjoyed book I've just finished reading.
22. I saw a man and two boys and two boys were very short.
23. I went to the home to get my wallet which I had forgotten.
24. I'm just going to have wash.
25. It's over the thirty years since a first man has stepped onto the moon.
26. Italy is an European country.
27. It's a honour to get this international award.
28. Let's meet at a café next to the club.
29. Mr. George lives in USA.
30. My father went to a school to meet my teacher.
31. Naguib Mahfouz is a greatest novelist in Egypt.
32. President lives in a palace.
33. Sama is the clevrer girl I have ever seen.
34. She goes to hospital as she is a nurse.
35. She is a tallest girl in the class.

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

A good leader should have many good qualities to be able to control his group. But the most important of them are , patience , cleverness, wisdom and the ability to take decisions.

It has become clear that great efforts are necessary to provide enough food, housing, education, medical assistance and jobs for ever - increasing population in Egypt. The government cannot bear this huge responsibility without the honest and sincere co-operative individuals.

Rules are important because they help people to work together and to cooperate. They help us to know what other people will do in certain situations. Without rules, life will be difficult and unbearable.

Translate into English:

- تقدم البنوك قروضا للشباب لإنشاء مشروعات خاصة بهم

- هل تملك الصفات التي تجعلك قائداً عظيماً ؟

- الصبر والتعاون من أهم صفات الفريق الجيد

Test 5

A- Language Functions

1) Respond to the following situations:

- 1) Your teacher asks you about the important qualities to be a successful student.
- 2) Your friend asks you about what makes you good friend.
- 3) Someone thinks that the river Nile is the shortest river in the world.
- 4) You want to invite your friend to your sister's wedding.

2) Say where these mini-dialogues take place:

1 - A : Your ticket, please .
A : Seat 33 b.

B : Here you are .

B : When does the film start?

A : at 9.00

Place

- Speaker A:

- Speaker B:

2 A : Can I help you?

B : yes, I would like a dictionary .

A : Dictionaries are over there.

B : Thanks, sir.

B- Vocabulary and Structure**3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- The gang a fire after their robbery.
a- made b- did c- ate d- ran
- 2- My brother could climb the trees
a- alone b- lonely c- only d- loneliness
- 3- The price Ahmed more in your game
a- consist b- contain c- include d- decline
- 4- The hunters The animal and took it to the zoo.
a- captured b- measured c- escaped d- cashed
- 5- My brother is always He believes that good things will happen.
a- pessimistic b- optimistic c- artistic d- enthusiastic
- 6- You mustn't Things. It is against the law and the instructions of our religion.
a- steal b- rob c- sell d- lend
- 7- My grandpa loved ships and the sea and spent 20 years in the
a- wavy b- navy c- heavy d- envy
- 8- I spent last night ----- letters to my friend
a- to write b- write c- wrote d- writing
- 9- He lost his eye sight ,he can't -----
a- hear b- see c- notice d- watch
- 10- Dr Taha Hussein wrote his -----about his life.
a- biography b- biology c- autobiography d- autograph
- 11- He booked a room in ----- Hilton.
a- the b- a c- no article d- an
- 12- France is European country .
a. the b. an c. a d. no article
- 13- oranges are good for you .
a. The b. no article c. Much d. A lot
- 14- He has bread and salad for dinner .
a. the b. a c. an d. no article
- 15- The machine is made of steal .
a. the b. an c. a d. no article
- 16- I respect him because of his -----honesty
a- the b- a c- no article d- an

4) Find the mistakes and correct them:

- 1- A united Kingdom is very far.
- 2- France is part of an European Union
- 3- My father went to a school to meet my teacher.
- 4- The Arabic is easy.
- 5- The Cairo is in Egypt.
- 6- The king Fouad ruled Egypt.

(C) Reading Comprehension and Set Books**5- Read the following passage then answer the questions:**

The Pharos at Alexandria was probably the first lighthouse in history. It took its name of Pharos from the island on which it stood . It stood there for over 1500 years and in working order for nearly a thousand years. The island Pharos was where Alexander the Great founded his city of Alexandria in 331 BC

Alexandria was planned to be not only the proud capital of Egypt but also an important port. With its wide straight streets, its royal palaces, its famous library, its museum of arts and sciences, where scientists could live and study free of charge. It was perhaps the finest city of the Mediterranean Region.

Alexandria had a serious disadvantage as a centre of trade: sailors had difficulty in finding and entering the port. This was because the land was very flat, That's why the idea of a lighthouse was born. The result was the famous building: the Pharos at Alexandria.

A. Answer the following questions

- 1-For how many years was the Pharos at Alexandria used as a lighthouse?

2-What made Alexandria the most beautiful city in the Mediterranean Region?

3-Find words in the passage which mean: a) without paying money b) extremely large

B. Choose the correct answer:

4-The underlined word "it" refers to (Alexandria – the lighthouse – the land – the Nile)

5-Alexandria was once the (lighthouse – port – edge – capital) of Egypt.

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

On leave, Mrs Magda gave last minute instructions to the new baby -sitter, a young girl of seventeen whose main work was to look after the baby. The girl had never done this work before and Mrs Magda was a little bit anxious. "Make yourself comfortable, Soha" Mrs Magda said. I've prepared a tray of food and fruit for you. It's on the table.

You can, of course, listen to the radio or watch the television, but don't have it on too loud because it might wake our little baby. Sound moves terribly in this house. If the boy wakes up, go to his room and stay with him there until he goes back to sleep. Anyway, he's two years old, so you shouldn't have any trouble. My husband and I will be back at about five o'clock". Mr. Kamal and his wife Magda returned rather later than they had expected they heard the sound of T.V.A light was still on in the living -room the little baby was crying loudly. His face was covered with tears. Mr Kamal switched off the television. Mrs. Magda went to the living -room immediately and came out, holding the baby who was very hungry "What is she doing there? Where is Soha? She is fast asleep'. She has eaten all the food here.

○A) Answer the following questions:

- 1.Why was Mrs. Magda worried about the baby - sitter?
2. What did Mr.and Mrs. Kamal find when they returned home?
3. What instructions did Mrs. Magda give the baby - sitter?

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Although Mrs. Magda gave strict instructions to the baby - sitter, she

- a) forgot them b) carried them out c) neglected them d) followed them

5. When Mrs. Magda returned home, she was surprised because

- a) the baby sitter was awake b) the television was on
c) there was a light in the living – room d) the baby was crying and Soha was fast asleep

D- The Novel

7) (A) Answer the following questions:

1- What did Gulliver do to the fleet of Blefuscu? Why do you think he didn't destroy the ships or kill the sailors?

2- At first the King of Lilliput was very happy and treated Gulliver as a hero. But then his opinion changed. Why did it change?

B) Read the following quotation and answer the question:

"I have done what I can to tell you of what is planned for you. You can now be prepared for what is to come."

- 1- Who said this to whom?
- 2- When and where did the person say this?
- 3- What was to come?

c) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

- 1- Blefuscu was an island about 800metres to the southwest of Lilliput
- 2- Gulliver decided not to go to that side of the island in case he was seen by the friends of Lilliput.

E- Writing

9) Write a paragraph of seven (7) sentences about:

"How you spent your last holiday?"

F- Translation

10) A- Translate into Arabic:

During our holiday, we usually go on a trip to visit places of interest .we can go to summer resorts to enjoy the sea and the mild weather. We can also practise our favorite hobbies

B- Translate into English:

- إن زيادة الإنتاج وتحديد النسل من أهم أهداف مصر في المرحلة المقبلة
- تسعى مصر الي تحقيق السلام في العالم وخاصة في منطقة الشرق الأوسط

Unit 6 - *That's Amazing*

above	فوق	explorer	مستكشف	nervous	عصبى
amateur	هاو	express	يعبر	no room for	لا مكان لـ
amazing	مدهش	famous	مشهور	ocean	محيط
ambition	طموح	feel fantastic	يشعر بالسعادة	opinion	رأى
ambitious	طموح	fiction	خيال	oxygen	أكسجين
answer	يرد - إجابة	finally	أخيرا	part	جزء
Beautiful	جميل	flag	علم	Phone up	يتصل
below sea level	تحت مستوى سطح البحر	formal	رسمى	popular	محبوب - شعبي
bride	عروسة	gist	لب - جوهر	pride	فخور
Bridegroom	عريس	goal	هدف	professional	محترف
challenge	يتحدى / تحدي	hobbies	هوايات	proud of	فخور بـ
challenger	أعمق مكان	how far	كم بعد	Quiz	مسابقة
charity	جمعية خيرية	idea	فكرة	Quiz line	خط المسابقات
climb	يتسلق	incredible	لا يصدق	raise money	يجمع مال
climber	متسلق	informal	غير رسمي	reach	يصل
common	شائع - منتشر	inspire	يوحى - يلهم	real	حقيقي
compare	يقارن	Italy	إيطاليا	reasons	أسباب
conquer	يغزو	Japan	اليابان	sea level	مستوى البحر
cylinders	أسطوانة - أنبوبة	lifelong	طول العمر	simple	بسيط
dangerous	خطير	lose life	يفقد حياة	slightly	بطريقة طفيفة
deep	عميق	magazine	مجلة	special	خاص
definitely	بالتأكيد	mistakes	أخطاء	sporting event	حدث رياضي
distinguish	يميز	modern	حديث	suddenly	فجأة
divers	غواصين	motivate	يحث - يدفع	summit	قمة
diving	غطس	motivation	دافع	Sweden	السويد
dream about	يحلم بـ	mountain	جبل	Switzerland	سويسرا
dream of	يحلم بـ	mountaineer	متسلق الجبال	the Pacific	المحيط الهادى
either	إما	national	قومي - وطني	toddler	طفل يمشى حديثا
enormous	عديد - هائل	nearly	تقريبا	trench	خندق
equipment	معدات	neither	لا	unpopular	غير محبوب
Everest	قمة إفريست	Nepal	نيبال	weekend	نهاية الأسبوع

Words & antonyms كلمات و عكسها

above	فوق	below	أسفل
certain	مؤكد	uncertain	غير مؤكد
common	شائع	uncommon	غير شائع
dead	ميت	alive	على قيد الحياة
familiar	مألوف	unfamiliar	غير مألوف
modern	حديث	ancient	قديم
popular	شائع / محبوب	unpopular	غير شائع / غير محبوب
professional	محترف	amateur	هاوي
real	حقيقي	unreal	غير حقيقي
soft	ناعم	hard	خشن
top	قمة	bottom	قاع
ugly	قبيح	beautiful	جميل
weak	ضعيف	strong	قوى

Important Vocabulary

be greatly interested in	يهتم اهتماما كبيرا بـ	form and content	الشكل و المحتوى
channels	قنوات	humanity = mankind	البشرية
creativity	الخلق / الابتكار	modern age	العصر الحديث
crisis	أزمة	phenomena	ظواهر
deviation	الانحراف	phenomenon	ظاهرة
environmental pollution	التلوث البيئي	privatization	الخصخصة
exert great efforts	يبذل جهودا عظيمة	witness a great shift	يشهد تحولا كبيرا

Expressions

at the summit of	عند قمة	go away	يسافر / يرحل
do something for money	يفعل شيء من أجل المال	go down	ينخفض / يهبط
dream of / about	يحلم بـ	go up	يرتفع / يصعد
excited about	يشعر بالإثارة بشأن	in danger of	...في خطر
exposure to	التعرض لـ	nervous of	قلق وخائف من
fall off	يسقط من علي	on the walls	علي الجدران
fall to his death	يسقط ميتا	phone up for the answer	يتصل للحصول علي الإجابة
familiar with	علي دراية بـ	worried about	قلق بشأن

Derivatives

verb		Noun		Adjective	
		accident	حادث	accidental	عرضي
amaze	يدهش	amazement	دهشة	Amazing	مدهش
				amazed	مندعش
challenge	يتحدى	challenge	التحدى	challenging	بثير التحدى
conquer	يغزو / يقهر	Conquest	غزو		
		conqueror	غازي / قاهر		
deepen	يعمق	depth	عمق	deep	عميق
inspire	يلهم / يوحى	inspiration	الهام / وحى	inspired	ملهم / موحى به
motivate	يحث / يحفز	motivation	دافعية / حافز	motivating	محفز

Definitions

above	- In or to a higher position than something else.	فوق
amazing	- Very surprising.	مذهل
challenge	- Something difficult or new that needs effort or skill.	تحدي
chief	- Highest in rank.	رئيسي
conquer	- get control over a problem or a feeling or defeat an enemy.	يسيطر علي / يتحكم في
lifelong	- continuing through your whole life.	مدي الحياة
mountaineers	- People who climb mountains.	متسلقي الجبال
professional	- A person who does something for money.	محترف
Sea level	- The average height of the sea.	مستوي سطح البحر
summit	- The top of a mountain or something else .	قمة
slightly	a little	قليلا
toddler	a child who has just started walking .	طفل يمشي حديثا

Language Notes

Arrive in يصل مكان كبير

- He arrived in Cairo yesterday.

Arrive at يصل مكان صغير

- I arrived at the airport.

- What time will you arrive ?

بدون حرف جر

reach + object يصل (بدون حرف جر)

- He reached Cairo yesterday.

get to يصل إلى (بصعوبة)

- We got to Cairo airport on time.

Special خاص بفتة أو طبقة

- Old people must be given special care.

private خاص بشخص أو ملك شخص

- I have a private room.

life الحياة بوجه عام (إسم لا يعد)

- Life is full of ups and downs.

a life - (lives) نوع معين من حياة (إسم يعد) غالبا يسبقها صفة

- We lead a happy life here .

a life of + إسم غير عاقل (lives)

- He leads a life of fun .

the life of + إسم عاقل (إسم يعد) - حياه (شخص / كائن)

- The life of my uncle is interesting.

Lifelong مدي الحياة

- Learning must be a lifelong activity.

Long life حياة طويلة

- My grand father had a long life of more than a hundred years.

Do a quiz يحل مسابقة

- I can't do this quiz .

Make a quiz يعمل (يؤلف) مسابقة

- She made a quiz that no one could do.

out of the blue شيء مفاجيء

= (suddenly and unexpectedly)

-She may arrive out of the blue.

made my day يجعل الشخص سعيد

= (made me very happy)

-The good news made my day.

a close call شيء سيء على وشك الحدوث

= (something bad nearly happened)

-Her death was a close call.

keep your cool كن هادي

= (to stay calm and not get upset or nervous)

-In spite of his bad behaviour, I kept my cool.

in a tight corner في موقف صعب

= (to be in a difficult situation without many choices)

-I was in tight corner, I couldn't answer any question.

Raise money = جمع مالا لغرض معين

- They raised a lot of money for the hospital.

Professional محترف (يلعب/ يعمل من اجل المال)

- Most football players are professional.

amateur هاوي

-He is an amateur squash player.

مصدر + to + (first/ second/third...../ last + to + be + the + الفاعل)

- Abu Terika was the first player to enter the football pitch.

Cause يسبب

- A cigarette end caused the fire.

cause of + اسم (سبب)

- A cigarette end was the cause of the fire.

reason with يحاول إقناع - يتجادل مع

- Don't reason with me. I won't agree

reason for + اسم داع - مبرر - سبب

- Can you give the reason for your high voice ?

The reason why + جملة كاملة

-Do you have a reason why you are late?

the same + n. نفس الشيء اسم

- Ahmed and Ali are the same age.

as + صفة + as نفس الشيء

- Ali is as old as Ahmed.

similar to مشابهة لـ

-My blouse is similar to yours.

Above sea level فوق مستوي سطح البحر

-Ethiopia is nearly 2,500 metres above sea level.

below sea level تحت مستوي سطح البحر

-Professional divers can dive to more than 150 metres below sea level.

by himself = alone = on his own بنفسه

- Mum cleaned the flat by herself (alone/ on her own).

for himself لنفسه

-He made the money only for himself, not for his family.

take part in = share in = participate in

يشارك

- I took part(shared / participated) in the race.

take place = happen = occur

يحدث

-The car accident took place(happened / occurred) an hour ago .

take the place of = replace يحل محل - Hend took the place of Noha in the competition.

take up much of يستنزف كثير من

- She takes much of her energy arguing with students.

take off يخلع ملابس - تقلع الطائرة

-The plane took off at about five.

- I took off my shoes and went into the mosque.

take over يتولى مهمة بعد

- After his father had died, he took over his work.

take after يشبه

- She takes after her grandma.

slightly different مختلف بدرجة طفيفة

- His answer was slightly different from mine.

-Room_ حجرة (اسم يعد)

- Our flat has four bedrooms.

-Room_ مكان أو فراغ (اسم لا يعد)

- I have no room in my room for the computer.

-elder_ elder (than) اكبر سنا في محيط العائلة - My elder sister is a doctor.

- eldest (الأكبر سنا في محيط العائلة)

- Uncle Hamdy is the eldest member of our family.

- older (than) تستخدم في المقارنة عموما (للعاقل وغير العاقل) - She is older than me her brother.

- oldest تستخدم في التفضيل عموما (للعاقل وغير العاقل)

-My grandpa is the oldest man in our village.

- Quit (quit/quit) يترك / يغادر / يتوقف عن شيء

- I quit smoking four years ago.

- She quit the game and turned off the computer.

- Quiet هادئ = calm

- My babysister is very quiet.

- Quite تماما / إلى حد ما

- They are quite late for school.

-لاحظ صيغة الأسئلة الآتية:

- What do you like most about...? ... ما أكثر شيء تحبه/يعجبك في

-What do you like least about...? ما أقل شيء تحبه/يعجبك في

-Think of = think about يفكر في / عند السؤال عن الرأي -What do you think of / about this camera?

-Think of يفكر في / يتذكر - I can't think of the answer now. -He should think of other people.

Child=baby =an infant طفل صغير

-This child cries all the time.

toddler الطفل الذي تعلم المشي حديثا

- My sister is a toddler.She walks slowly.

teenager = adolescent مرافق

- It is not easy to control teenagers.

youth = young people شباب (تجمع) /شباب(بصفة عامة) /مرحلة الشباب

- He is an ambitious youth.

- It is very important to listen to youth.

- During his youth, he worked as a driver.

Exercises

Respond to each of the following situation:

1.A tourist asks you what the second largest city in Egypt is. What do you say?

2.Someone asks you about the highest mountain in the world.

3.Someone asks you how long the River Nile is. What do you answer?

4.Someone asks you which city is the capital of Britain. What do you reply?

5.You advise your sister about her exam.

6>Your friend asks you what your feeling is after visiting the pyramids.

7.Your sister asks you to tell her about Omar Samara.

8.Your younger brother or sister asks you how old the Pyramids at Giza are. What do you answer?

where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

1- A: Can I help you?

B: Yes, please . I'd like to borrow a book .

A: What kind of book do you want ?

B: A history book .

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

2- A: Can I help you ?

B: Yes, please . I'd like a pen and five notebooks .

A: Here you are . they are only 9 pounds .

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

3-A : How old is this mummy ?

B : It is about 4000 years old.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

4-A : How would you like to pay for this suit , sir ?

B : By credit card.

A : Ok , I will put it in a bag .

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

Choose the correct answer:

1. Beating the Italian football team was a source of national.....for all Egyptians.
a) generosity b) dignity c) identity d) pride
2. The accident *happened*the blue .It happened all of a sudden.
a) out of b) inside c) (outside d) away from
3. The experience really.....my day .I hope I'll do it again one day.
a) did b) took c) had d) made
4. An accident was a close.....but I could avoid the racing car.
a) phone b) call c) contact d) mobile
5. I was in a dangerous situation but I.....my cool.
a) saved b) stayed c) kept d) made
6. The Pyramids are very.....buildings.
a) amazing b) shocking c) admiring d) frightening
7. I'm sure he will attend the party .He will.....come.
a) possibly b) probably c) definitely d) occasionally
8. Everest is the..... mountain in the world.
a) oldest b) highest c) deepest d) widest
9. I'm just phoning.....for a chat.
a) out b) away c) down d) tip
10. The.....of this mountain is covered with snow for most of the year.
a) summit b) sea level c) depth d) distance
11. This side of the swimming pool is too.....to stand up in.
a) high b) old c) wide d) deep
12. Climbing would be a real.....for me .I don't like heights.
a) challenge b) conquer c) task d) occupation
13. A..... is a person who has recently learnt to walk.
a) baby b) grown-up c) toddler d) pensioner
14. The twins are very similar .They are.....different.
a) greatly b) tremendously c) largely d) slightly
15. A.....is a person who climbs mountains.
a) summit b) mountaineer c) challenger d) toddler
16. My brother has had a..... wish to be a doctor.
a) lifelong b) lifeboat c) (lifeline d) lifelike
17. I can't ride a horse .I wish I could.....my fear.
a) improve b) heat c) break d) conquer
18. He always dreams.....becoming a successful engineer.
a) about b) of c) with d) by
19. Can you tell me the real.....why you don't study your lessons well?
a) cause b) effect c) reason d) result
20. Reading and walking are
a) hobbies b) tasks c) duties d) occupations
21. There are a lot of photos.....my cousins bedroom
a) in b) at c) above d) on
22. Three women and two men.....their lives in the car accident.
a) wasted b) missed c) lost d) caught
23. Don't touch the electric wire .It's
a) dangerous b) lifelong c) forbidden d) secure
24. A/An.....football player earns a lot of money.

25. 25 .His.....is to become a successful doctor one day.
 a) amateur b) professional c) common d) (life long
26. Messner was the first man to reach the summit of Everest without the use of oxygen
 a) reason b) conquer c) ambition d) hobby
27. People who..... their goals in life are often successful.
 a) cylinder b) pipe c) cube d) tube
28. Messner climbed mountains which are.....8000 metres high.
 a) conquer b) reach c) arrive d) take
29. 29 .What do you think the main.....of accidents on mountains are?
 a) more b) above c) less d) over
30. After the accident, he became nervous.....the big mountains.
 a) reasons b) causes c) goals d) excuses
31. I don't want to be.....from home for months.
 a) on b) from c) of d) by
32. I don't want to be.....from home for months.
 a) out b) away c) outside d) outline
33. It's a dangerous mountain .It..... lives.
 a) misses b) loses c) takes d) borrows
34. The situation is very dangerous .There is no.....for mistakes.
 a) place b) window c) rooms d) room
35. Do you think that..... is a safe hobby?
 a) mountain b) mountainous c) mountaineering d) mountaineer
36. Have you ever dreamt of.....a mountain?
 a) conquering b) defeating c) defying d) winning
37. Omar Samra is a successful
 a) mountaineer b) mountainous c) mountaineering d) mountain
38. Climbing..... has changed over time.
 a) equipment b) task c) apparatus d) aid
39. The poet was.....by nature when he wrote his beautiful poem.
 a) respired b) inspired c) aspired d) conspired
40. 39..... are men who climb mountains.
 a) Inventors b) Explorers c) Discoveries d) Experiments
41. Students need to be.....to work harder.
 a) motivated b) inspired c) conquered d) amazed
42. Would you like to.....this magazine quiz?
 a) make b) do c) hold d) conduct
43. There are fourteen mountains which are more than 8000 metres.....sea level.
 a) on b) over c) above d) through
44. When did he..... the station?
 a) arrive b) get c) arrive in d) reach
45. The..... of the mountain is the highest point of it.
 a) summit b) surface c) level d) depth
46. The sea.....is used as a standard for measuring the height of an area of land.
 a) depth b) standard c) surface d) level

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. A grown-up is a child who has just started walking.
2. After the accident, I have become more nervous from the really big mountains.
3. Amateur mountaineers climb mountains for money.
4. Attending my friend's wedding party did my day.
5. Be careful as there is no home for mistakes.
6. Can I ask you a softly different question?
7. Climbing would be a real conquer for me as I don't like heights.
8. Everest is eight thousand, eight hundred and fifty metres above sea standard.
9. Everest is the world's deepest mountain.
10. For him, winning a match has always been national proud.
11. He has dreamt about climbing since he was a toddler.
12. He hopes to beat Mount Everest one day.
13. He is amateur, he plays for money.
14. He is a wise man as he always keeps his cold when he is in a dangerous situation.
15. He made his cool although she insulted him.
16. He thought he arrived his goal when he passed his exams.
17. He was in a tight corridor when his new car was stolen.
18. His happy is listening to classical music.

19. His requirement is to become an engineer when he grows up.
20. How far over sea level is Kilimanjaro?
21. How much is Everest above sea level?
22. I don't want to go away and leave home for months too.
23. I'm thinking in buying a new car.
24. Medicine as a profession is very profitable.
25. Mountaineering is a person who climbs mountains.
26. Mountaineering is the task of very few people.
27. Mountaineers need to be very suitable.
28. My brother has had a longing wish to be a doctor.
29. Omar Sarnra always takes an Egyptian flag with him and leaves it in the mountains.
30. One day, out of the blue, she announced that she was leaving.
31. Ornar Samra was definitely the first Egyptian to reach the height of Everest.
32. Prices have risen by an average of 4% over the past year.
33. Seeing my friend after such a long time really did my day.
34. She spoke in a quiet voice so as not to wake him.
35. Some mountaineers climb mountains without the use of Oxygen pipes.
36. The accident was a near call but fortunately I could avoid it.
37. The dangerous accident happened out of the blue.
38. The island was absolutely amazed.
39. The professional mountaineer says that he's always been inspired by stories of great explorers.
40. The tree in Sweden is nearly ten thousand years old.
41. This part of the ocean is over eleven kilometres deep.
42. To me, Everest looks like a frightened mountain.
43. We don't know the real causes why people choose this exciting hobby,
44. We were in a narrow corner so escape looked impossible for me.
45. What do you like better about your job?

Adjectives

١- صفات الإشارة تتفق مع الموصوف في العدد و لا علاقة لها بالتذكير و التانيث:

١- الصفة في اللغة الانجليزية تسبق الموصوف في غالب الاحيان:

7- الصفات التي تشير الى نوعيه المقياس تأتي بعد الموصوف:

-The room is five metres long.

- I'm thirty years old.

8- الصفات المركبة (المتعارف عليها) تسبق الموصوف مثل الصفة العادية :

- He has a mother-in-law complex.

لدية عقدة من الحماة

- I met him in a never-to-be-forgotten day.

لقد قابلته في يوم لا ينسى (خالد)

- Egypt adopts a wait-and-see policy.

تتبنى مصر سياسة التآني

- Nasser is a never-say-die leader.

عبد الناصر زعيم خالد

9- الاسم المستخدم ضمن صفة مركبة لا يجمع اذا سبقت الصفة المركبة الموصوف و يجمع اذا جاءت بعده:

- I have a ten-year-old son. = My son is ten years old.

10- الصفات التي تبدأ بالبادئة (a) مثل (afraid/awake/asleep/alone/alive/absent/alight/aflame/alike) لا يمكن ان تأتي قبل الموصوف:

- I saw the factory aflame.

-The two babies are alike.

11- الصفات المكونة باضافة (ing) للفعل او التصريف الثالث غالبا ما تأتي بعد الموصوف:

- For the time being, we must wait here.

- The money won was paid in dollars.

- لكنها ايضا تأتي قبل الموصوف:

- a diving-suit / a washing-machine

12- الصفات المنتهية بـ (ed) تستخدم للعاقل و الصفات المنتهية بـ (ing) تستخدم غالبا لغير العاقل:

Terrifying	مرعب	terrified	مرعوب	Frightening	مخيف	frightened	خائف
amazing	مدهش	Amazed	مدهش	annoying	مزعج	Annoyed	متضايق
Embarrassing	محرج	embarrassed	يشعر بالإحراج	boring	ممل	Bored	يشعر بالملل
fascinating	مبهر	Fascinated	منبهر	exciting	مثير	Excited	يشعر بالإثارة
depressing	كئيب	depressed	مكتئب	Confusing	مربك	Confused	مرتبك
Disappointing	مخيّب للأمل	disappointed	خاب أمله	Exhausting	مُنهك	Exhausted	مُنهك

أحيانا تستخدم الصفة المنتهية بـ ing مع العاقل والصفة المنتهية بـ ed مع غير العاقل :

- He is a boring person.

- The poisoned food killed those people.

ثالثا : استخدام الصفة بدون موصوف

1- يمكن ان تأتي الصفة بدون موصوف (اي لا يكون الموصوف بعدها) بعد الافعال التالية:

← (turn- grow-become-go-get) بمعنى "يصبح" و (look - seem- appear) بمعنى يبدو؛ و (be) بمعنى يكون فقط

بالاضافة الي افعال الحواس مثل (taste- feel- sound-smell):

- She is happy. -He gets angry when you ask him for money.

2- و يمكن ايضا ان تأتي الصفة بدون موصوف اذا كانت تصف اسما سبق وصفة:

- Would you like a blue blouse or a red? - I'd prefer a blue.

3- احيانا تستخدم (one / ones) بديلا للاسم الموصوف بعد الصفة:

- Will you buy the blue jacket? - No, I'll take the brown one.

رابعا : استخدام many much / few / little

1- تستخدم كلمتي (much / little) لوصف اسم لا يعد بينما تصف (many / few) اسما يعد :

- I didn't do much exercise because I had had little time.

- She won't invite many friends; only few close ones.

2- تستخدم (many / much) في حالتين النفي والاستفهام :

- I don't like much sugar in my coffee.

- Did you break many eggs?

3- لا تستخدم (many / much) في الجمل المثبتة الا في الحالات التالية:

أ- اذا كانت (many / much) تصفان او تحلان محل فاعل الجملة:

- Many think that money is the most important thing in life.

- Much has been done up till now.

- Many people are afraid of change.

- Much talk in class makes teachers angry.

ب- اذا كانت (many / much) يسبقهما ظرف مثل (very/too/so/how...etc.):

- I don't eat too much rice.

- I've never seen so many people.

- We don't know how many soldiers we will face.

ج- في العبارات التي تبدأ ب (if / whether) :

- I'm not sure if there is much milk in the fridge.

- We want to know whether many people watch the tennis championship.

د- تستخدم (many a) في الجمل المثبتة:

- Many a student has got full marks.

- During holiday, I've missed many a good friend.

هـ فيما عدا الحالات السابقة لا تستخدم (many / much) في الجمل المثبتة و يستخدم بدلا منها:

- Many= —————> a lot of/ lots of / plenty of/heaps of/a (large/good)number of
- Much= —————> a lot of/plenty of/heaps of/a large quantity of/ a good deal of/ a great deal of

خامسا : استخدام الاسم كصفة

1- يمكن استخدام أسماء الخانات كصفات لكنها لا تستخدم للمقارنة او التفضيل او التساوى و لا تجمع:

- A gold ring / an iron chair / silver coins

2- يمكن استخدام اسماء معينة كصفات لبيان النوع مثل :

- an apple-tree / a day-nurse /a hand-saw/a sun-bath/a duty-call...etc.

3- هناك حالات استثنائية يجمع فيها الاسم المستخدم كصفة مثل:

-man-servant —————> men-servants -woman-servant —————> women-servants

4- بعض الاسماء يستخدم كصفة لبيان الغرض من الاسم الموصوف مثل :

- a tea-spoon = a spoon for putting tea in a cup —————> tea-spoons

-a wood-box = a box for storing wood in —————> wood boxes

5- بعض الاسماء يستخدم كصفة لبيان المكان الذي ينتمي اليه الاسم الموصوف:

- the kitchen floor / the city hospital / a Cairo citizen.....etc.

6- بعض اسماء الاشخاص المشهورين جدا تستخدم صفات مشتقة من اسماءهم مثل:

- Shakespearean drama / Platonic friendship / Buddhist philosophy ...etc.

7- صفات الجنسية ان دلت على لغة تكون اسما مثل :

- English / French/ Turkish /Italian/ Spanish.....etc.

8- يمكن استخدام to + inf. بعد صفات مثل:

pleased/ disappointed /amazed/afraid/glad / delighted /surprised/ relieved /astonished /مندهش /يشعر براحة

-I am sorry to hear your bad news. -She was surprised to meet him.

- لاحظ أنه إذا كانت الجملة منفية نستخدم :not to

- It was careless of Heba not to tidy her room.

9- لاحظ استخدام صفات مثل (nice / kind / stupid / silly / clever / polite / careless) في التركيبة التالية:

It (be) + adj. + of + someone + to + inf.

-It is kind of you to lend me the money. -It was careful of Ali to phone the police.

Comparative adjectives: صفات المقارنة

- تستخدم صفات المقارنة لتقارن بين طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهما:

- Ahmed is taller than Ali.

- A train is fast, but a plane is faster.

- Football is more exciting than volleyball.

- Fish is less expensive than meat.

- تكوين صفات المقارنة من الصفات القصيرة:

أ- يضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة:

- quiet —————> quieter - cheap —————> cheaper - narrow —————> narrower

ب- إذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بـ (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) نضيف في المقارنة فقط r:

-Wide —————> wider - nice —————> nicer

-large —————> larger - simple —————> simpler

ج- الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بـ y مسبق بحرف ساكن تتحول (y) الي (ier)

- lucky —————> luckier - healthy —————> healthier -easy —————> easier

د- إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بحرف متحرك واحد يليه ساكن واحد نضاعف الحرف الأخير بشرط ان يكون المقطع الأخير قويا في النطق إذا كانت الصفة تتكون من مقطعين :

-hot —————> hotter - fat —————> fatter - thin —————> thinner

- تكوين صفة المقارنة من الصفات الطويلة

—————> more / less+ adj. الصفة + than

- more / less expensive than

- more / less terrifying than

- more / less exciting than

- more / less dangerous than

ملاحظات عامة على صفات المقارنة

- يمكن استخدام less قبل الصفات القصيرة:

- He is less strong than Ali. = He is not as strong as Ali. = Ali is stronger than him.

- نلاحظ ان less عكس more ولذلك نعكس طرفي الجملة عند استخدام احدهما مكان الاخرى:

- The pen is more expensive than the pencil. = - The pencil is less expensive than the pen.
= - The pencil is cheaper than the pen.

- عند استخدام not as مكان جملة المقارنة يجب عكس طرفي الجملة كما يلي

- Cairo is hotter than London. = - London isn't as hot as Cairo. = - London is less hot than Cairo.

- عند استخدام not as مع استخدام عكس الصفة " لا نبدل الاطراف

- Hady is fatter than Magdy. = - Hady isn't as thin as Magdy.

- يمكن استخدام (slightly / even / a bit / much / a lot / a little / far...) قبل صفات المقارنة:

- Travelling by train is much slower than Travelling by plane. - I had to drive a bit faster.

- يمكن استخدام صفتي مقارنة للدلالة على التغير المستمر في شيء

- It's become harder and harder to find a flat. - It's become more and more difficult to find a flat.

- لاحظ شكل الضمير بعد than (يستخدم ضمير فاعل إذا كان بعده فعل و ضمير مفعول في حالة عدم وجود فعل):

- He is taller than I am. = - He is taller than me.

- We earn more money than they do = - We earn more money than them.

- يمكن استخدام المقارنه للتعبير عن السبب والنتيجة اي بدلا من " الشرطية if

جملة النتيجة + the more+ , جملة السبب + the more+

جملة النتيجة + , جملة السبب + er+ صفة The+

- If you eat a lot , you will be fat. = - The more you eat , the fatter you will be.

- Hard study leads to high marks. = - The harder you study, the higher marks you will get.

التشابه Similarity

- هناك اكثر من طريقة للتعبير عن التشابه او تساوي طرفين في صفة ما ومن تلك الطرق ما يلي

الطرف الثاني + as + الصفة + as + be + الطرف الاول

الطرف الثاني + as + الاسم من الصفة + the same + have + الطرف الاول

الاسم من الصفة + the same + have + الطرف الثاني + and + الطرف الاول

الاسم من الصفة + be + of the same + الطرف الثاني + and + الطرف الاول

الصفة + be + الطرف الثاني + , الطرف الاول + Like+

- Aya is as beautiful as Mariam. = Aya has the same beauty as Mona.

= Aya and Mariam have the same beauty. = Aya and Mariam are of the same beauty.

= Like Aya, Mariam is beautiful.

يمكن نفي التشابه بأكثر من طريقة اهمها ما يلي

الطرف الثاني + as + الصفة + (as / so) + be + not + الطرف الاول

الطرف الثاني + as + الاسم من الصفة + have + don't / doesn't / didn't + الطرف الاول

الاسم من الصفة + have + don't / didn't + الطرف الثاني + and + الطرف الاول

الاسم من الصفة + be + not of the same + الطرف الثاني + and + الطرف الاول

- Hany isn't as clever as Menna. = - Hany isn't so clever as Menna.

- Hany doesn't have the same cleverness as Menna.

= Hany and Menna aren't of the same cleverness. = - Hany and Menna don't have the same cleverness.

- لاحظ الاسم الذي يمكن استخدامه بعد (the same + n...+as) من الصفات الآتية:

Expensive/ cheap	price	deep	depth
Big / small	size	wide	width
Old / young	age	long	Length
Far / near	distance	High / high	height
strong	strength		

- This house is as high as yours. = This house is the same height as yours

- The green blouse is as expensive as the red blouse.

= The green blouse is the same price as the red blouse.

صفات التفضيل Superlative Adjectives

- تستخدم صفات التفضيل لتقارن بين أكثر من طرفين في صفة مشتركة بينهم (تمييز فرد عن مجموعة):

- Ahmed is the tallest boy in class.
- The plane is the fastest means of transport.
- Football is the most exciting sport.
- Fish is the least expensive protein source.

- تكوين صفات التفضيل من الصفات القصيرة:

أ- توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم يضاف (est) لنهاية الصفة :

- old → the oldest
- strong → the strongest
- tall → the tallest

ب- إذا كانت الصفة القصيرة تنتهي بـ (e) ساكن (لا ينطق) توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم يضاف (st) فقط لنهاية الصفة :

- nice → the nicest
- wide → the widest
- simple → the simplest

ج- الصفات القصيرة التي تنتهي بـ y مسبق بحرف ساكن توضع (the) قبل الصفة ثم تتحول (y) الي (iest) في نهاية الصفة :

- lazy → the laziest
- heavy → the heaviest
- noisy → the noisiest

د- إذا انتهت الصفة القصيرة بحرف متحرك واحد يليه ساكن واحد نضاعف الحرف الأخير بشرط ان يكون المقطع الأخير قويا في النطق إذا كانت الصفة تتكون من مقطعين مع اضافة (the) قبل الصفة و (est) في نهاية الصفة :

- big → the biggest
- thin → the thinnest
- hot → the hottest

تكوين صفة التفضيل من الصفات الطويلة

الصفة. the most / the least + adj.

- dangerous → the most / the least dangerous
- interesting → the most / the least interesting

صفات غير منتظمة Irregular adjectives

Adj. / adv.	comparative	Superlative
Bad / badly / ill / wrong	worse than	the worst
far	farther (further) than	the farthest (furthest)
fore	former than	the first
Good / well / right	better than	the best
Late	latter than/ later than	the last/ the latest
little	less than	the least
many \ much	more than	the most
old	older / elder	oldest / eldest

ملاحظات عامة علي صفات التفضيل

-further = more

- Do you have further information?

-most + adj. (without the) = very

-The information I've just heard is most important. = very important

- لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل مع الاعداد الترتيبية (first / second / third/ fourth...etc.) :

-Cairo is the first largest city in Africa.

- لا تستخدم (the) قبل صفة التفضيل في حالة وجود ضمير ملكية او ('s) الملكية قبل الصفة:

- The femto-second is Zewail's biggest achievement in Chemistry.

- The femto-second is his biggest achievement in Chemistry.

- لاحظ استخدام (in) مع الأماكن بعد صفة التفضيل؛

-The longest river in the world is the Nile. (Not: of the world)

- The best player in the team is still Messi.

-The tallest girl in the family is Noura.

استخدام no بدلا من اسلوب التفضيل

باقي الجملة + التمييز + اسلوب تفضيل + "verb to be" + المقارنة

الاسم المقارن + than + اسلوب مقارنه + "verb to be" + التمييز + No

- Kareem is the most courageous man in the city. = - No man in the city is more courageous than Kareem.
- The Nile is the longest river. = - No river is longer than the Nile
- Water is the cheapest liquid. = - No liquid is cheaper than water

ever - never : المقارنة والتفضيل باستخدام

→ "verb to be" + "have /has" ever + p.p. + الفاعل الاول + التمييز + اسلوب تفضيل
→ "have -has" never + p.p. + a/an + صفات بدون اضافة + like + تمييز + صفة بدون اضافة + الفاعل الثاني

- Ali is the cleverest boy I have ever seen. = - I have never seen a clever man like Ali
- I have never watched a funny film like that. = - This film is the funniest film I have ever seen.
- Zewail is the most important person I have ever met.
= - I have never met an important person like zewail.

ملاحظات عامة علي الصفات

- يمكن استخدام (صفة + so) للتأكيد بمعنى جدا :

- The story is so boring. - The match was so exciting.
- يمكن استخدام (so + صفة + that...) لو انتهت الجملة الاولى بصفة:
The story is very interesting. I read it twice. = - The story is so interesting that I read it twice.
- يمكن استخدام (suchthat...) لو انتهت الجملة الاولى باسم او بصفة متبوعة باسم موصوف :
- He is a tall man . he picks apples. = - He is such a tall man that he picks apples.
- The suit is so heavy I can't carry it. = - It is such heavy suit that I can't carry it.
- لاحظ أن:

- 1- So long = such a long time - I haven't seen so long that I haven't recognized him.
= - I haven't seen Ali for such a long time that I haven't recognized him.
- 2- So far = such a long way - I have never travelled so far.
= - I have never travelled such a long way.
- 3- So (many - much) = such a lot of - Why did you buy so much food?
= - Why did you buy such a lot of food?

- استخدام " too + صفة + to + inf." :

- نستخدم بمعنى جدا لدرجة انه لا يستطيع وتحل to مكان can't او couldn't
- He is very old that he can't walk. = - He is too old to walk
- استخدام (المصدر + enough to (الصفة) بمعنى بدرجة كافية لـ.....
- He is very clever. He can pass the exam easily. = - He is clever enough to pass the exam easily.
- استخدام not enough بدلا من too : (نفي to be . ونعكس الصفة)
- He is too fat to run. = - He isn't thin enough to run.

الحال / الظرف Adverb

- الظرف غالبا مشتق من الصفة وهناك نوعان من الظروف :

اولا الظرف المنتظم : وهو يتكون كما يلي :

- 1- اضافة (ly) للصفة :
- 2- اذا انتهت الصفة ب e تحذف (e) وتضاف y فقط :
- 3- اذا انتهت الصفة ب y وقبلها حرف ساكن تحذف ونضع للصفة ily
- 4- الصفات المنتهية اصلا ب ly للتحويلها الى ظرف تاخذ شكل الشبة جملة الظرفية التالي :

- Quiet → quietly - quick → quickly - slow → slowly - bad → badly
- Horrible → horribly - probable → probably - incredible → incredibly
- Children are incredible learners of languages. = Children learn languages incredibly.
- easy → easily - Happy → happily - angry → angrily - funny → funnily
- He is friendly in speaking. = - He speaks in a friendly way.

ثانيا : الظروف الغير منتظمة :

1- هناك بعض الظروف يتغير شكلها عند التحويل من صفة لظرف

- Good ~~well~~
- He is a good player. = - He plays well. / - She cooks well. = - She is a good cook
2- ظروف لا تتغير أو تختلف عن شكل الصفة

- Fast ~~fast~~ - late ~~late~~ - hard ~~hard~~ - early ~~early~~
- He is fast. = - He runs fast. / - He is a hardworking person. = - He works hard.
- تستخدم الظروف لوصف الفعل أو الصفة أما الصفة فتصف اسم:

- Ali is polite. = - Ali behaves politely.
- He is a careful driver. = - He drives carefully.
- He runs quickly. = - He is a quick runner.
- The player was bad when he played. = -The player played badly.
- تأتي ظروف الشك /الاحتمال أو التكرار مثل definitely - possibly - probably - usually قبل الفعل وليس بعد الفعل :

- It is probable he will buy a car. = - He will probably buy a car.
- He prays as usual . = - He usually prays.

- لاحظ كيفية تحويل الجمل التالية:

- She sang beautifully.(was) = - She was beautiful in singing.
- The minister spoke clearly. (clear) = - The minister was clear in speaking.
- لاحظ كيفية تحويل never و rarely في الجمل التالية:

- I have never seen such courage. (Never) = - Never have I seen such courage.
- She rarely left the house. (Rarely) = - Rarely did she leave the house.

- الكلمات التالية تعامل مثل never و rarely :

Seldom - scarcely - hardly - not only ... but also - no sooner .. than - not until - under no circumstances...

Enough, very, too

Enough	بعد الظرف أو الصفة و قبل الاسم	- Is the water in the bottle cold enough? (adjective) - My sister doesn't study hard enough. (adverb) - They have enough food. (noun)
very	قبل الصفة أو الظرف	- This boy is very clever. (adjective) - He runs very quickly. (adverb)
very	في الجملة المنفيه مع صفة للنقد المذهب	- This girl is ugly. = - This girl is not very beautiful - He moved slowly. = - He didn't move very quickly.
too	قبل الصفة أو الظرف	- This water is too cold. (adjective) - She studies too hard. (adverb)

Strong adjectives and adverbs of degree

الصفات القوية و ظروف الدرجة

- ظروف الدرجة

- وهي ظروف توضع قبل الصفة أو الظرف بهدف تحديد الدرجة التي وصلت اليها الصفة مثل :

very - quite - absolutely - extremely - so ...etc

- He is extremely exhausted, so he can't work any more.
- The film is quite interesting. - He is very old. - She is extremely shocked.
- الصفات القوية يكون معناها أقوى بكثير من الصفات العادية

عادية Ordinary	قوية Strong	عادية Ordinary	قوية Strong
angry غاضب	Furious غضبان جدا	frightening مخيف	terrifying مرعب
bad سيئ	terrible فظيع	hot ساخن	boiling في حالة غليان
big كبير	Enormous ضخم	tired متعب	exhausted مرهق
cold بارد	freezing متجمد	unusual غير عادي	incredible خيالي

- نستخدم very / quite / rather / fairly مع الصفات العادية

- I'm very tired. - The film was quite frightening.
- لاحظ أن quite / fairly تعطي معني ايجابي بينما rather تعطي معني سلبي :
- It is quite hot. (I can bear it) - It is rather hot. (I can't bear it)

- The man was really / absolutely exhausted.

- لا حظ هذه الجمل وكيفية حلها:

- After spending the night in the desert, the children were very cold. (freezing)

= - After spending the night in the desert, the children were freezing.

- Some people laughed during the film, but I found it very frightening. (terrifying)

= - Some people laughed during the film, but I found it terrifying.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer :

1. This shop is the nearest one.....my house.
a) of b) from c) to d) on
2. Ahmed was the.....to arrive.
a) late b) later c) last d) least
3. He is very depressed he has gotmark in his class.
a) little b) less c) least d) the least
4. When should I repay him?- The sooner the.....
a) good b) well c) best d) better
5. Nada missed the train because she arrived at the railway station
a) late b) later c) last d) lately
6. My Italian is quite.....but I can't speak it quickly.
a) good b) better c) best d) well
7. Tom is.....as I'm .We are both 15.
a) old b) older c) old than d) as old
8. This book will help you to play football much
a) good b) better c) best d) well
9. This test is no problem .I can do it.....
a) easy b) easily c) easier d) easiest
10. People say Chinese is the.....language to learn.
a) difficult b) more difficult c) the most difficult d) as difficult
11. I live.....away from school than all my friends.
a) further b) as far c) far d) the furthest
12. Noha is as..... her sister.
a) old b) older c) (old than d) old as
13. He isn't.....as his friend.
a) cleverer b) more clever c) as clever d) cleverest
14. He is the.....boy in class.
a) tall b) taller c) tallest d) as tall
15. We have beaches in the world.
a) beautiful b) more beautiful c) the most beautiful d) most beautiful
16. He is not.....intelligent as his father.
a) more b) as c) like d) such
17. You should eat.....if you want to be slim.
a) least b) little c) less d) the least
18. This is.....restaurant I've ever been to.
a) worst b) worse c) the worst d) bad
19. He doesn't write
a) clear b) clearly c) clearer d) clearest
20. He drives his car
a) slow b) slower c) slowest d) slowly
21. He speaks English
a) fluent b) fluently c) fluency d) more fluent
22. The car is.....more expensive than the bicycle.
a) much b) many c) least d) most
23. There are.....cars in the street than usual.

- | | | | |
|----------|--------|---------|-----------|
| a) fewer | b) few | c) much | d) little |
|----------|--------|---------|-----------|
24. A motorcycle uses.....petrol than a car.
- | | | | |
|---------|----------|---------|---------|
| a) less | b) fewer | c) more | d) many |
|---------|----------|---------|---------|
25.people speak Arabic than Chinese.
- | | | | |
|----------|------------|----------|---------|
| a) Least | b) As many | c) Fewer | d) Much |
|----------|------------|----------|---------|
26. This watch is very cheap .It cost me.....than I expected.
- | | | | |
|---------|----------|---------|---------|
| a) more | b) fewer | c) less | d) much |
|---------|----------|---------|---------|
27. It'sexpensive to travel by air than by sea.
- | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| a) less | b) much | c) more | d) many |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
28. The African elephant is.....than the Asian elephant.
- | | | | |
|------------|----------------|-----------|------------|
| a) smaller | b) much bigger | c) taller | d) shorter |
|------------|----------------|-----------|------------|
29. Health is.....than wealth.
- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| a) important | b) most important | c) more important | d) least important |
|--------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
30. Women are..... than men.
- | | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|------------|---------------|
| a) as patient | b) more patient | c) patient | d) patient as |
|---------------|-----------------|------------|---------------|
31. Reading a book is.....than watching a film.
- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| a) interesting | b) more interesting | c) most interesting | d) as interesting |
|----------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
32. December is much more.....than August.
- | | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|---------|
| a) colder | b) coldest | c) as cold | d) cold |
|-----------|------------|------------|---------|
33. Brown bread is white bread.
- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------|---------------|---------------|
| a) healthier than | b) healthy | c) healthy as | d) as healthy |
|-------------------|------------|---------------|---------------|
34. Chicken soup is as.....as tomato soup.
- | | | | |
|----------|---------|-----------|---------|
| a) worse | b) good | c) better | d) best |
|----------|---------|-----------|---------|
35. This is the.....picture, I've ever seen.
- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|
| a) as pretty | b) pretty | c) prettier | d) prettiest |
|--------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|
36. Her accent is.....than mine.
- | | | | |
|------------|-----------|---------|------------|
| a) as good | b) better | c) best | d) so good |
|------------|-----------|---------|------------|
37. This programme is much more interesting.....the last one.
- | | | | |
|-------|---------|---------|-------|
| a) as | b) like | c) than | d) of |
|-------|---------|---------|-------|
38. Tennis is.....interesting than football.
- | | | | |
|-------|-------|---------|---------|
| a) so | b) as | c) much | d) more |
|-------|-------|---------|---------|
39. I read that women are.....divers than men.
- | | | | |
|---------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| a) good | b) better | c) the best | d) so good |
|---------|-----------|-------------|------------|
40. He plays the guitar really.....
- | | | | |
|---------|---------|-----------|--------|
| a) well | b) good | c) better | d) bad |
|---------|---------|-----------|--------|

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. This car is as older as my car.
2. Ahmed is the better student in the class.
3. Arabic is the easiest subject.
4. Everest is highest than Kilimanjaro .
5. Everest is not as high than that.
6. Part two is most difficult than part one.
7. For me , his climb was the more important sporting event of 2007.
8. The older tree in the world is nearly 10,000 years old.
9. The much food you eat, the fatter you become.
10. The place was more farther than I thought.
11. No student in our class is as cleverer as John.
12. This is the more higher building in our city.
13. She is more hard-working of all the students in this class.
14. The blue vase is the same price than the yellow one.
15. The weather is many colder than normal for this time of year.
16. That's the funny joke I have ever heard.
17. Eating fruit is most fattening than eating chocolate.
18. This is most exciting film I've ever seen.
19. The most tall building in our city is the central bank.
20. English is more easier to learn than Chinese.
- 21.

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

The 20th century has been full of achievements and the catastrophes. It has witnessed the invention of the car, the plane and new forms of media. It saw the birth of the internet and the telecommunication revolution. On the other hand, it has witnessed two world wars , a cold war and countless regional wars on all continents

.....

.....

.....

Omar Samra was the first Egyptian to climb Everest. When he was young he dreamed of climbing it. Finally he achieved his goal in 2007.

.....

.....

.....

Suddenly , out of the blue , the wind started to blow us towards some trees. I thought we were about to hit them, but the pilot told us to keep our cool. He said everything would be ok.

.....

.....

.....

The ministry of foreign trade is mainly designed to increase exports. Industry and agriculture should be developed so that Egyptian products are competitive in world markets.

.....

.....

.....

Translate into English:

- بعض الناس تعتقد أن تسلق الجبال هواية خطيرة.

.....

- تعتبر السياحة مصدر هام للدخل القومي في مصر.

.....

- إن زيادة الإنتاج وتحديد النسل من أهم أهداف مصر في المرحلة المقبلة

.....

- تسلق الجبال أكثر صعوبة من ركوب الدراجات . أليس كذلك ؟

.....

- من الصعب التنفس على ارتفاع كبير من سطح البحر بسبب انخفاض كمية الأكسجين

.....

.....

Test 6

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to the following situations:

- 1 - Someone asks you which city is the capital of Britain. What do you reply?
- 2 - Someone asks you how long the River Nile is. What do you answer?
- 3 - A tourist asks you which the second largest city in Egypt is. What do you say?
- 4 - Your younger brother or sister asks you how old the Pyramids at Giza are. What do you answer?

2 - Say where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 - A: How much is that book, please? | B: It's 45 pounds. |
| A: Here you are. | B: And here is the change. Thank you. |

Place	- Speaker A:	- Speaker B:
-------------	--------------------	--------------------

2 - A: Would you like something else, sir?	B: No, thank you.	A: Here is your bill, sir.
--	-------------------	----------------------------

Place	- Speaker A:	- Speaker B:
-------------	--------------------	--------------------

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- The White Desert in Egypt is very low, in fact it is below
a) ground b) water c) sea level d) cities
- 2- Ali was only late - he should have arrived at 5 pm but he was delayed by ten minutes.
a) very b) some c) little d) slightly
- 3- The tree was old, and its grew deep into the earth.
a) leaves b) branches c) roots d) bottom
- 4- I would like to go -sea diving in the Red Sea.
a) far b) deep c) low d) scuba
- 5- This English exercise is very difficult. It is really a for me!
a) challenge b) trouble c) difficulty d) question
- 6- Hassan's is to become a successful photographer.
a) want b) ambition c) career d) life
- 7- The top of the mountain towered thousands of metres us.
a) above b) below c) away d) from
- 8- To stay safe as an explorer, you need to take with you the correct safety
a) machinery b) things c) clothes d) equipment
- 9- The experience in my life was when I saw a big bear in the wild.
a) frightened b) least frightening c) more frightening d) most frightening
- 10- You should buy the green trousers. They are the in the shop.
a) more expensive b) less expensive c) few expensive d) least expensive
- 11- Aya and Omar are the same height. They are each other.
a) as tall as b) taller than c) as tall than d) more tall than
- 12- Miss Heba is the teacher I've ever had. Her classes are always so interesting and I always look forward to them.
a) inspiring b) most inspiring c) biggest inspiring d) more inspiring
- 13- Tamer is a much calmer person than Omar, so before their exams Omar was much than Tamer.
a) more nervous b) nervous c) most nervous d) least nervous
- 14- The animal which I have seen in Egypt is a camel.
a) most big b) biggest c) more big d) bigger
- 15- Video cassettes are not as DVDs.
a) moderner b) so modern c) modern d) more modern
- 16- This English exercise is the challenging exercise in the book!
a) few b) more c) most d) biggest

4- Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1- English is more easier to learn than Chinese.
- 2- Pirates are people who climb mountains.
- 3- The highest point of a mountain is called a transmit.
- 4- The most tall building in our city is the central bank.
- 5- The sea line is the average height of the sea.
- 6- This is most exciting film I've ever seen.

C- Reading Comprehension

5- Read the following passage and then answer the questions:

Are supermarkets designed to persuade us to buy more? When you enter a supermarket, the manager knows better than you do how you will behave – which way you will walk, where you'll look, what will make you buy one product rather than another. The layout of a supermarket is designed to take shoppers around the store, from left to right. Then, shoppers will pay attention to all the products.

Fresh fruits and vegetables are shown near supermarket entrances. This gives the impression that only healthy food is sold in the shop. Basic foods that everyone buys, like sugar and tea, are not put next to each other. They are kept in different places so customers go past other attractive goods before they find them. In this way shoppers are encouraged to buy products that they do not really need.

Customers also buy more when the shelves are full than they are half-empty. They do not like to buy from shelves with few products on them because they feel there is something wrong with those products.

Answer the following questions:

- 1- What do supermarkets usually show near the entrance? Why?
- 2- What's the aim of putting basic foods far from each other?
- 3- Why don't people buy from shelves with few products on them?

Choose the correct answer:

4-The best title of this text is -----

- a) Supermarket owners b) Supermarket and children
c) Successful supermarkets d) Supermarket entrances

5-The underlined word them refers to -----

- a) different places b) customers c) attractive foods d) basic foods

6- Read the following passage then answer the questions below :

Computers are a major technological breakthrough of the twenty first century. Their benefits are numerous. Yet, much can be said against them.

The main disadvantage of a computer is that staring at a screen for long periods of time can be damaging to the eyes, and sitting for hours at a time is certainly not healthy. Secondly, computers distract from social interactions such as conversation. People can be inclined to become anti-social and stay at home to use their computer. Finally, one of the major arguments against the use of computers is that the more jobs which are done by computers, the fewer are done by people.

However, the advantages of computers are numerous, such as the undeniable educational benefits, especially to children. School subjects become more interesting when presented on a computer screen. In addition, computers are valuable to any business, making life easier and saving time by being capable of storing and retrieving vast amounts of information at the touch of a button. Furthermore, personal gains can be seen as the use of computers increases powers of concentration.

Answer the following questions:

1-How do computers affect social life?

2-In what way are computers beneficial to any business?

3-Find words in the passage which mean the following:

- Important development or discovery

- Find again or extract stored information

Choose the correct answer:

4-Some people have the negative opinion about computers that they -----.

- a) solve the problem of unemployment b) increase the number of unemployed people
c) help people find more jobs d) create more job opportunities

5-Some people are for the use of computers because-----.

- a) they stare at the screen for a long time b-they sit for hours at a time
b) computers distract them from social interactions
D-computers increase powers of concentration

D- The Novel

7) (A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why did the King's adviser visit Gulliver one night? What did he tell Gulliver?

2- Why didn't Gulliver destroy the King's city? What did he do instead

B- Read the following quotation. then answer the questions

3. He was very pleased by this, and he fed the sheep on his best sea biscuits.

A) Who was very pleased?

B) What did he think of Gulliver when he told him about his adventure?

C) When did he believe Gulliver's adventures in Lilliput?

c) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

1- Gulliver became rich when he sold the painting of the king.

2- Gulliver was extremely relaxed when I heard what they were planning to do to punish me.

D- Writing

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

"A book that you have enjoyed reading"

F- Translation

9- A) Translate into Arabic:

Without reclaiming land in the desert and building more and more factories in the new cities, it will be impossible to face the serious problem of over-population. Therefore, great efforts are being made to achieve this goal.

B) Translate into English:

- 1- تتأثر السياحة تأثيرا كبيرا بالأحداث الجارية في العالم
2- يجب أن يعرف العالم بأسره أن مصر بلد محب للسلام و ضد الإرهاب

Unit 7 - Business Around The World

advantages	مميزات	employ	يوظف	recent	حديث
afford	يتحمل	employee	موظف	recently	حديثاً
agriculture	زراعة	employer	صاحب عمل	reception	صاله إستقبال
amount	كمية	engineer	مهندس	receptionist	موظف إستقبال
appointment	موعد	environment	بيئة	reference	مرجع
appreciate	يقدر	export	يصدر	region	منطقة
arrange	يرتب	expressions	تعبيرات	relationship	علاقة
beans	فول	formal	رسمي	reporter	صحفي
buyer x seller	بائع x مشتري	global	كوني	reports	تقارير
carry	يحمل	goods	بضائع	representative	ممثّل - مندوب
chain	سلسلة	harbour	ميناء	researcher	باحث
chemicals	كيماويات	import	يستورد	sales manager	مدير مبيعات
chief	رئيسي	include	يشتمل على	Scotland	اسكتلندا
Chief buyer	المشتري الرئيسي	increase	يزيد	set up	يؤسس - ينشئ
chief engineer	كبير المهندسين	industries	صناعات	successful	ناجح
comfortable	مريح	international	دولي	supermarket	سوبرماركت
communicate	يتصل	introduce	يقدم	supply	يمد - يزود بـ
company	شركة	investment	استثمار	system	نظام
corporation	شركة - مؤسسة كبيرة	Irish	أيرلندي	take a seat	يأخذ مكان
create	يخلق	local	محلي	take place	يحدث
customers	زبائن - عملاء	location	موقع	technology	تكنولوجيا
decrease	يقلل	loss	خسارة	trade	يتاجر - تجارة
describe	يصف	metal	معدني	trade with	يتاجر مع
details	تفاصيل	organisation	منظمة - مؤسسة	vegetables	خضروات
disadvantages	عيوب	pay	يدفع	wages	أجرة
distribute	يوزع	percent	بالمائة	wealth	ثروة
do a project	يعمل مشروع	population	سكان	website	موقع نت
draft	مسودة	predict	يتنبأ	welfare	الرخاء / رعاية
economic	اقتصادي	prediction	تنبؤ	win-win situation	موقف في صالح الطرفين
economical	اقتصادي	profit	ربح	work for	يعمل لحساب
economy	اقتصاد	quantities	كميات	yield	محصول

Definitions

afford	- have enough money to pay for something.	يتحمل تكلفة
chain	- A group of shops, hotels, etc. that are owned by the same person or company.	سلسلة محلات
chain	- It is a type of jewellery.	سلسلة (نوع من الحلي)
chain	- You use it to connect things.	سلسلة حديدية
corporation	- A large business organization.	مؤسسة
distribute	- supply goods to shops and companies in a particular area.	يوزع
economy	- The way that money, businesses and products are organised in a country.	اقتصاد
employ	- pay someone to work for you.	يوظف
global	- affecting or including the whole world.	عالمي / كوني
goods	- Things that are produced to be sold.	بضائع
technology	- Knowledge and equipment used in scientific or industrial work.	تكنولوجيا
wages	- The money that someone is paid every week by their employer.	أجور

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
Communicate يتصل	Communication اتصال		
Distribute يوزع	Distribution توزيع		
Economize يقتصد	technology التكنولوجيا economy الاقتصاد	technological تكنولوجي economic اقتصاد	economically اقتصاديا
employ يوظف	employment العمالة employee موظف / عامل employer صاحب العمل	employable صالح للعمل	
nationalize يؤمم	nation أمة	national قومي / وطني international دولي	Nationally محليا Internationally دوليا

Important Vocabulary

agricultural	زراعي	communications	الاتصالات
public libraries	المكتبات العامة	deep effect	تأثير عميق
pressures	الضغوط	slogan	شعار
unemployment	البطالة	destructive	مدمر
industrial	صناعي	proud of	فخور بـ
commercial	تجاري	diagnose disease	يشخص الأمراض

Expressions

all over Egypt	في كل أنحاء مصر	look for = search for	يبحث عن
all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم	proud of	فخور بـ
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	refer to	يشير إلى
bring up	يربي	related to	مرتبط بـ
export ... to	يصدر .. إلى	thank somebody for	يشكر شخص من أجل
grow up	يكبر	thanks to	بفضل
in this way	بهذه الطريقة	write to someone	يكتب لشخص

Language Notes

be located on = be situated on = lie

تقع (علي محيط او بحر او نهر)

- The public park is located (is situated – lies) on the Nile.

be located in = be situated in = lie

موقع/ مكان في دولة أو قارة

- Egypt is located (is situated – lies) in the northeast of Africa. .

Lie يقع

lie to يكذب على

lie about يكذب بخصوص

- The club lies on the seaside.

- She always lies to us.

- She lies about doing well at school.

Harbour مرفأ (لرسو السفن)

- The ship couldn't reach the harbour.

Port مدينه ميناء

- Alexandria is the most important port in Egypt.

make profit يحقق ربح

- Our company made great profit last year.

make loss يخسر

- They made loss because they had no experience.

Everyday (adj.) يومي

- I do a lot of jobs in my everyday life.

Every day (adv.) يوميا (كل يوم) - We went fishing in the lake every day during our holiday.

work on (something)	يحسن الشئ/ يصلح /يصنع	work up	ينمي/ يطور/ يحسن
work on (someone)	يحاول أن يقتنع الشخص	work(himself) up	ينضايق / يغضب من شئ
work in \ into	يمزج	work for	يعمل لحساب
work out	يحل / يحسب /يتدرب بانتظام	work in someone's favour	يعمل لصالحه / يفيد

advantages of + الشيء مميزات / ايجابيات - The advantages of the internet are various.
advantages for + الشخص مميزات / فوائد - The factory has alot of advantages for the people of the village

employ يوظف -The company employed fifteen girls.
employer صاحب العمل -The employer met some employees.
employee موظف - Ali is a hard-working employee.

-الكلمات الاتية تعامل معاملة المفرد بالرغم من انها تنتهي بحرف S:
physics الفيزياء - mathematics الرياضيات - statistics علم الإحصاء - Economics علم الاقتصاد

-(be) made of مصنوع من مادة لا تتغير - Pens are usually made of plastic.
-(be) made from مصنوع من مادة أو أكثر تتغير - Glass is made from sand.
-(be) made in صنع في (مكان) - Most clothes are made in Egypt.
-(be) made by مصنوع بواسطة - My car was made by a big factory in Japan.

-Most = nearly all = almost all

-Most students are lazy. = Nearly all (Almost all) students are lazy.

-Start with = begin with + n.

- I usually start my lunch with the soup.

-Start by = begin by + v-ing

- We can start the journey by visiting the Plants Island.

-hire يستأجر (عادة لفترة قصيرة) / يوظف

- We hired a car for the trip to Ismailiya.

-The manager hired some graduates.

- hire out يؤجر

- I want to hire out my flat while I am on holiday.

- Rent : (a flat / an office / a building) يستأجر (لفترة طويلة)

- We want to rent another shop.

-Look forward to + v-ing / n.

يتطلع الي

- I'm looking forward to meeting you.

- We look forward to the summer holiday.

trade with يتاجر مع (شخص / دولة)

- China trades with most countries all over the world.

- Our company trades with foreign companies.

trade in

يتاجر في شئ

- My uncle trades in every thing.

a trade

تجارة

- My main interest is foreign trade.

-afford + to + inf. . = -afford + n.

لديه من المال ما يمكنه من شراء

-We can't afford to buy a new car.

-We can't afford a new car.

-لاحظ استخدام كلمة (chief):

- chief importer المستورد الرئيسي

-chief buyer المشتري الرئيسي

-chief engineer كبير المهندسين

-عند استخدام (effect) بدلا من (affect) يتغير زمن (have) حسب زمن الفعل الأساسي للجملة:

-affect = have an effect on

-The floods affected most parts of the village.

-The floods had a bad effect on most parts of the village.

Business Letters

- الخطاب الرسمي أو التجاري هو خطاب يرسل إلى شركة / مؤسسة / بنك / جهة رسمية لغرض معين مثل الحصول علي وظيفة / قرض / طلب عضوية وعادة يكتب الخطاب الرسمي بلغة رسمية تختلف عن لغة الخطاب الذي يرسل لصديق:
- اكتب عنوانك و التاريخ في أعلى يمين الصفحة
- ويمكنك إضافة رقم التليفون و البريد الإلكتروني
- يكتب اسم وعنوان الشخص أو الشركة التي تكتب لها في الجانب الأيسر من الصفحة بعد عنوانك مباشرة
- ابدأ الخطاب باستخدام لقب الشخص
- في الفقرة الأولى اكتب بوضوح الغرض من ارسال الخطاب
- لا تستخدم اختصارات في الأفعال

Your dress/date عنوانك و التاريخ

Your Phone No.

E-mail address

Name and address of the Company/ person you are writing to

اسم وعنوان الشخص أو الشركة

Dear Mr./ Mrs./ Dear Sir or Madam,

(موضوع الخطاب Letter details)

Yours Sincerely,

Name and Signature اسم وتوقيع مرسل الخطاب

Exercises

Respond to each of the following situation:

1. A person you do not know arrives in your school. Ask if you can help them.
2. In class, you see a school friend who has been away for several weeks. What do you say?
3. You ask your sister what she would do if she got a holiday.
4. You meet a friend who you have not seen for a long time. What do you say?
5. You meet a friend who you have not seen for a long time. What do you say?
6. You meet a visitor to your country at the airport. You want to make him or her feel at home. What do you say?
7. You meet a visitor to your country. You want to make him or her feel at home.
8. You want to borrow your friend's novel to read.

where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

- 1- A : I would like to meet the manager, please.
 B : May I have your name and the reason for the meeting?
 A : Ali Said . I would like to import some goods from China. B : Wait a minute till I inform him.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 2- A : How would you like your haircut , sir? B : Short, please.
 A : Are you going to shave? B : No , not this time.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

Choose the correct answer:

1. Mr. Wong is the.....for a Chinese company.
 a- chief b- representative c- yield d- chain
2. My father is.....Cairo Airport to meet my uncle who is coming from abroad.
 a- on b- with c- at d- in
3. She has.....an appointment to meet the manager of the company.
 a- done b- made c- taken d- had
4. A: Good morning. How can I help you? - B: Morning I.....an appointment with Mr Ali.
 a- do b- make c- take d- have
5. A.....is someone who is chosen to do things, speak or vote for someone else.
 a- chief b- representative c- yield d- chain
6. May I Mr. Kamal ? He's our sales manager.
 a- offer b- present c- show d- introduce
7. Mr. John works.....Fruco as a scientist.
 a- with b- on c- for d- to
8. Metro is a famous supermarket..... in Egypt.
 a- yield b- chain c- representative d- chief
9. The rich man has just arrived.....the main reception desk.
 a- on b- in c- at d- to
10.a seat, sir till I inform the manager that you've come.
 a- Take b- Have c- get d- Hold
11. Egypt.....a lot of Chinese products.
 a- exports b- reports c- imports d- imparts
12. Who is the.....manager of your company?
 a- sales b- sailing c- selling d- sails
13. Miss O'Connor is the buyer of an Irish supermarket chain.
 a- president b- chief c- chef d- mean
14. Welcome back to Egypt. It's good.....you again.
 a- to see b- at seeing c- in seeing d- for seeing

15. I spend my time.....computer games.
a-) *in playing* b- *playing* c- *to play* d- *play*
16. Don't worry.....your children. You can leave them play in this area.
a- *on* b- *of* c- *about* d- *from*
17. Do you have problems.....your car?
a- *on* b- *at* c- *for* d- *with*
18. Can you.....a time when you come to our office tomorrow?
a- *make* b- *do* c- *suggest* d- *hold*
19. Our fruit.....has increased since we started watering plants more often.
a- *yield* b- *chief* c- *representative* d- *chain*
20. Fruco is a company which grows and..... fresh fruit to Europe.
a- *imports* b- *exports* c- *reports* d- *supports*
21. Where does the meeting..... place?
a- *make* b- *take* c- *do* d- *hold*
22. A.....is used to connect things.
a- *Yield* b- *chief* c- *representative* d- *chain*
23.is a combination of all the knowledge, equipment and methods that are used in scientific or industrial work.
a- *Technology* b- *Corporation* c- *Economy* d- *Employment*
24. He is poor. He can't.....to buy a car.
a- *afford* b- *employ* c- *have* d- *own*
25.is the way that money, business and products are organized in a country or area.
a- *Technology* b- *Corporation* c- *Economy* d- *Yield*
26. The world has become a... village due to the improved means of communication.
a- *universal* b- *local* c- *regional* d- *global*
27. Countries have been tradingeach other for thousands of years.
a- *in* b- *on* c- *between* d- *with*
28. European and African.....are buying more things made in China.
a- *producers* b- *regulators* c- *customers* d- *employers*
29. Our neighbour is a businessman who trades.....imported clothes.
a- *in* b- *on* c- *at* d- *with*
30. A global company sells what it..... to other countries around the world.
a- *customers* b- *imports* c- *produces* d- *affords*
31. Because can be made cheaply, people can afford them.
a- *corporations* b- *goods* c- *wages* d- *trades*
32. Toyota is a Japanese car company which is an example of a large international.....
a- *corporation* b- *cooperation* c- *economy* d- *customer*
33. The global economy has increased trade.
a- *local* b- *regional* c- *national* d- *international*
34. The.....situation in our country is improving.
a- *economical* b- *economic* c- *economically* d- *economized*
35. New businesses will.....hundreds of people in the city.
a- *employ* b- *afford* c- *distribute* d- *consume*
36. Companies can now.....goods all around the world.
a- *employ* b- *afford* c- *distribute* d- *consume*
37. My sister.....with her pen pals by e-mail.
a- *contact* b- *link* c- *connect* d- *communicate*
38. Big companies can set.....in almost any location.
a- *off* b- *out* c- *up* d- *down*
39. Waiters working in this restaurant get low weekly.....
a- *fees* b- *wages* c- *salaries* d- *fares*
40. The city has become crowded because of the.....in the number of cars.
a- *increase* b- *decrease* c- *limit* d- *corporation*
41. We will..... the problem in an attempt to find a solution to it.
a- *afford* b- *suggest* c- *discuss* d- *distribute*
42. The increase in international trade means that more people can buy more goods, which..... turn means that more people all over the world have jobs.

- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| <i>a- on</i> | <i>b- at</i> | <i>c- by</i> | <i>d- in</i> |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
43. He expanded his business and.....some local workers.
- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>a- rented</i> | <i>b- hired</i> | <i>c- let out</i> | <i>d- took out</i> |
|------------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|
44. A.....situation means that companies make more profits and people get jobs.
- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>a- win-win</i> | <i>b- no-win</i> | <i>c- win back</i> | <i>d- win over</i> |
|-------------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
45. A.....is an area of water near land where it is safe for boats to stay.
- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>a- port</i> | <i>b- harbour</i> | <i>c- shore</i> | <i>d- coast</i> |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
46. I'm looking forward to..... him next week.
- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| <i>a- meet</i> | <i>b- have met</i> | <i>c- met</i> | <i>d- meeting</i> |
|----------------|--------------------|---------------|-------------------|
47. I'm phoning to..... a meeting with you.
- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|--------------|-------------------|
| <i>a- arrange</i> | <i>b- make</i> | <i>c- do</i> | <i>d- conduct</i> |
|-------------------|----------------|--------------|-------------------|

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. A Japanese car company is an example of a large international cooperation.
2. Agriculture, which works most of the population, is mainly in the east of the country.
3. Before you go to the dentist, it's better to do an appointment.
4. Companies can know divide goods all around the world.
5. Countries have been trading in each for thousands of years.
6. Customers are things that are produced to be sold.
7. Did you get a good flight?
8. Egypt imports oil to other countries.
9. Egyptian cotton is imported to all European countries.
10. Egyptians export clothes from China and Turkey though they ha' the best quality cotton.
11. E-mails help to improve the way companies contract with their customers.
12. European and African customs are buying more things made in China.
13. He is so poor that he can't able to buy a new shirt.
14. His monthly fare is \$1,000.
15. Hyper is one of the biggest supermarket serials in Egypt.
16. I don't eat meat, but I like almost types of fish
17. I make an appointment with the manager of the company.
18. I spent most of my time watch TV.
19. I think I'm suffering from the affects of too little sleep.
20. I was rented by the first company I applied to.
21. If goods are produced more cheaply. trade decreases because more people can afford them.
22. International companies can sometimes rent local workers.
23. May I introducing Mr. Karim ?
24. May I offer my friend Sara?
25. Morocco is located in the Atlantic Ocean.
26. Mr. Tom Masters is a search scientist from the University of Edinburg in Scotland.
27. My uncle is the president engineer for the car company.
28. Our fruit result has increased since we started watering our plants more often.
29. Presentatives of countries which export oil are meeting to discuss the economic situation.
30. Salaries are the money that the workers are paid every week by their employer.
31. She can't affect to buy a new house.
32. Technique is the knowledge and equipment used in scientific or industrial work.

Grammar

Relative Clauses عبارات الوصل

1 -who

- ضمير وصل بمعنى الذي / التي / الذين / اللاني و تحل محل الفاعل العاقل (أي يأتي بعدها فعل):

- The man who has been working all day looks very tired. - I met the man who bought your old car.

- ضمير وصل بمعنى الذي / التي / الذين / اللاني و تحل محل المفعول العاقل (أي يأتي بعدها فاعل و يمكن حذفها):

- The man who you saw in the party with me is my uncle.
= - The man you saw in the party with me is my uncle.

- ا تستخدم (who) فقط محل الفاعل و المفعول العاقل في الجمل الاعتراضية بعد (,) ولا تحل محلها (that):

- Messi, that is a famous footballer, plays for Barcelona. (X)
- Messi, who is a famous footballer, plays for Barcelona. (✓)

- لا تستخدم حروف الجر قبل (who) يل تأتي في المكان المناسب في الجملة:

- The man for who you work is very kind. (X)
- The man who you work for is very kind. (✓)

2- Whom

- ضمير وصل بمعنى الذي / التي / الذين / اللاني تحل محل المفعول العاقل و يمكن حذفها و لابد أن يأتي بعدها فعل:

- The man whom you saw in the party with me is my uncle.
- = - The man you saw in the party with me is my uncle.

- لا تستخدم حروف الجر قبل (who) يل تأتي في المكان المناسب في الجملة:

- The man for who you work is very kind. (X)
- The man who you work for is very kind. (✓)
- The man for whom you work is very kind. (✓)

3- Which

- ضمير وصل بمعنى الذي / التي / الذين / اللاني و تحل محل فاعل غير عاقل (أي يأتي بعدها فعل):

- Reham bought a mobile which was expensive.

- ضمير وصل بمعنى الذي / التي / الذين / اللاني و تحل محل مفعول غير عاقل (أي يأتي بعدها فاعل و يمكن حذفها):

- The food which you cook tastes delicious. = - The food you cook tastes delicious.

- ا تستخدم (which) فقط محل الفاعل و المفعول العاقل في الجمل الاعتراضية بعد (,) ولا تحل محلها (that):

- The cheetah, that belongs to the cat family, is very fast. (X)
- The cheetah, which belongs to the cat family, is very fast. (✓)

- يمكن أن تستخدم (which) لتشير الي الفكرة العامة في الجملة التي تسبقها و ليس اسما محدد و في هذه الحالة لا تحل محلها (that):

- He came first, that made his parents very happy. (X)
- He came first, which made his parents very happy. (✓)

- يمكن أن تستخدم حروف الجر قبل (which) أو تأتي في أي مكان المناسب في الجملة:

- The bus by which we go to school is very old. (✓)
- The bus which we go to school by is very old. (✓)

4- That

- يمكن استخدام (that) بدلا من (who/ which / whom):

- The man that has been working all day looks very tired.
- Omer that you met yesterday is my brother.
- The food that you make tastes delicious. - Reham bought a mobile that was expensive.

- لا تستخدم حروف الجر قبل (that) يل تأتي في المكان المناسب في الجملة:

- The man for that you work is very kind. (X)
- The man that you work for is very kind. (✓)
- The bus by that we go to school is very old. (X)
- The bus that we go to school by is very old. (✓)

- هناك حالات لابد ان نستخدم فيها (that):

أ. إذا جاء في الجملة اي من

All - any - one - some - every - only - many - much - few - no

- I lent her all the money that she needed. - Waheed was the only friend that helped me.

ب. مع صفات التفضيل بدلا من (which).

- The fox is the cleverest animal that I have ever seen.

ج. إذا كانت تعود علي عاقل وغير عاقل في نفس الوقت

- I told my classmates about the leaders and the places that I admired.

5 - Where

- و تستخدم بمعنى " حيث " و تعود علي المكان و لابد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل أو مفعول:

- This is the room where I sleep. - A school is the place where we learn.

where = in which / at which / to which / from which / about which.....

- This is the room in which I sleep. - A school is a place at which we learn.

- يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع المكان في حالات معينة:

- This is the house where we built. (X)
- This is the house which we built. (✓)

- لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على المكان قبل أو بعد (where):

- I went to the room in where I sleep. (X)
- I went to the room where I sleep in. (X)
- I went to the room in which I sleep. (✓)
- I went to the room which I sleep in. (✓)

6 – When

- تحل محل الوقت أو الزمن بمعنى " الوقت الذي / حين / حينما " و لابد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل أو مفعول:

- 1980 is the year when I was born. - Friday is the day when we get up late.
- Six o'clock is the time when I get up.

when = in / on / at / from which

- 1980 is the year in which I was born. - Friday is the day on which we get up late.
- Six o'clock is the time at which I get up.

- يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع التعبيرات الزمنية في حالات معينة:

- I don't like August when is very hot. (X)
- I don't like August which is very hot. (✓)

- لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على التعبير الزمني قبل أو بعد (when):

- Friday is the day on when my son was born. (X)
- Friday is the day when my son was born on. (X)
- Friday is the day on which my son was born. (✓)
- Friday is the day which my son was born on. (✓)

7- Whose

- تحل محل الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم و تحل محل :

(Noun + 's / my – his – her – its – our – your – their...)

- I saw the man whose son was kidnapped. - He refused to marry a girl whose nose was big.

حذف ضمائر الوصل Omission of relative pronouns

1 – يتم حذف كل من (who – which – whom) عندما يحلوا محل مفعول (اي اذا جاء بعدهم فاعل):

- This is the woman who I helped. = This is the woman I helped.

2 – يمكن حذف كل من (who - which) في الحالات التالية:

أ. اذا جاء بعدهم زمن مستمر و في هذه الحالة يتم حذف الضمير و (be) ويتبقى (v.ing) :

- The boy who is wearing a red shirt is my son. = The boy wearing a red shirt is my son.

ب. اذا جاء بعدهم صيغة مبنى للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا الضمير و (verb to be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للفعل .

- The girl who was arrested yesterday stole clothes from shops.

- The girl arrested yesterday stole clothes from shops.

ج. اذا جاء بعدهم (verb to be) كفعل أساسي وهنا يتم حذف الضمير و (verb to be)

- The woman who is in this shop, lent me this pen. -The woman in this shop lent me this pen.

3 – يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل اذا كان بعده جار و مجرور (حرف جر واسم):

- The girl who is at the supermarket wants to buy some sweets.
- The girl at the supermarket wants to buy some sweets.

4 – يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل اذا كان بعده اسم أو صفة بعدها اسم:

- Abu Terika, who is a famous footballer, was interviewed on TV yesterday.
- Abu Terika, a famous footballer, was interviewed on TV yesterday.

ملاحظات على ضمائر الوصل

1-يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلا من عبارة الوصل اذا كان ضمير الوصل في الجملة يحل محل الفاعل مع كلمات مثل:

The first / second/last/only.....

- I was the first person who left the ship. = I was the first person to leave the ship.

-It + is / was + اسم عاقل + who / that ...

- It is Mariam who(that) left the door open.

-It + is / was + اسم غير عاقل + which / that ...

- It was the dog which (that) scared the baby.

3- لاحظ:

all of, most of, none of, both of, neither of, either of, any of, one of, some of, many of, much of,

+

whom (people)

which (things)

- He tried three jackets, none of which fitted him.
- Ten people applied for the job, none of whom were suitable.
- He invited a lot of people. All of them were his friends.
- = - He invited a lot of people, all of whom were his friends.
- He has a number of watches. Three of them are solid gold.
- = - He has a number of watches, three of which are solid gold.

4- لاحظ مكان حرف الجر في هذه الجمل التي تستخدم فيها (where - that - which)

- Cairo is the town in which I was born.

- Cairo is the town which I was born in.

- Cairo is the town that I was born in.

- Cairo is the town where I was born.

5- لاحظ الشكل الاتي

It + be + a relative clause

- Ahmed had an accident. (It was)

- It was Ahmed who had an accident (not Ali).

5- و لاحظ الشكل الاتي

What really+ be + that..... =

.The thing that.....+ be + that.....

- What really makes me admire her is that she is very polite.
- The thing that makes me admire her is that she is very polite.

- هناك نوعان من جمل الوصل:

لاحظ ان:

1- تعطي جملة الوصل معلومة هامة او ضرورية عن الاسم الذي تعود عليه وفي هذا النوع لا نستخدم (,) :

- The man who helped the boy is kind.
- The company where my mother works is multi-national.

2 - لا تعطي جملة الوصل معلومة هامة او ضرورية عن الاسم الذي تعود عليه بل معلومة شائعة وفي هذا النوع نستخدم (,) :

- Cairo, which is extremely big, is the capital of Egypt.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer

- 1.I spent two weeks in Port Said.....has a very beautiful beach.
a- which b- where c- whose d- what
- 2.We had a wonderful time in Finland.....consisted entirely of different kinds of fish.
a- where b- what c- that d- whose
- 3.The person..... lent me the film wants it back.
a- which b- that c- whose d- where
- 4.The skateboard.....you ordered has arrived.
a- that b- who c- what d- when
- 5.This is the person.....car was stolen.
a- that b- which c- who d- whose
- 6.What's the name of the film.....you watched?
a- that b- where c- who d- whose
- 7.I don't understand..... he's saying.
a- which b- that c- what d- when
- 8.They couldn't give us the information..... we need.
a- that b- what c- who d- where
- 9.....they need is a new managing director.

- | | <i>a- Who</i> | <i>b- That</i> | <i>c- What</i> | <i>d- which</i> |
|--|-------------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 10. The pitch..... | | we played the match on | was in really poor conditions. | |
| | <i>a- who</i> | <i>b- that</i> | <i>c- what</i> | <i>d- where</i> |
| 11. It's the first time..... | | we've met. | | |
| | <i>a- when</i> | <i>b- which</i> | <i>c- where</i> | <i>d- that</i> |
| 12. The place..... | | I live is quiet enough for me. | | |
| | <i>a- that</i> | <i>b- where</i> | <i>c- when</i> | <i>d- who</i> |
| 13. 13. What's the name of the film..... | | won the Oscar? | | |
| | <i>a- who</i> | <i>b- whose</i> | <i>c- that</i> | <i>d- what</i> |
| 14. I did a computer course..... | | was really helpful. | | |
| | <i>a- what</i> | <i>b- which</i> | <i>c- who</i> | <i>d- when</i> |
| 15. Did you understand..... | | he was saying? | | |
| | <i>a- that</i> | <i>b- which</i> | <i>c- what</i> | <i>d- when</i> |
| 16. Men are more likely to choose magazines..... | | feature computer, cars and boats. | | |
| | <i>a- where</i> | <i>b- when</i> | <i>c- who</i> | <i>d- which</i> |
| 17. Boys also enjoy playing toys..... | | have clear functions. | | |
| | <i>a- where</i> | <i>b- that</i> | <i>c- when</i> | <i>d- whose</i> |
| 18. A new study carried out in the lab..... | | I work at Cambridge University shows that new-born girls look longer at a face. | | |
| | <i>a- when</i> | <i>b- which</i> | <i>c- what</i> | <i>d- where</i> |
| 19. Do you remember the day..... | | we met? | | |
| | <i>a- when</i> | <i>b- where</i> | <i>c- whose</i> | <i>d- that</i> |
| 20. You can't talk to babies..... | | makes it difficult to do research about their minds. | | |
| | <i>a- where</i> | <i>b- which</i> | <i>c- what</i> | <i>d- who</i> |
| 21. He stayed in London..... | | he studied English. | | |
| | <i>a- which</i> | <i>b- where</i> | <i>c- what</i> | <i>d- whose</i> |
| 22. Did you watch the film..... ? | | | | |
| | <i>a- which I told you</i> | <i>b- I told you about</i> | <i>c- I told you on about it</i> | <i>d- that I told you</i> |
| 23. The violin..... | | my father gave me was made in the 18th century. | | |
| | <i>a- who</i> | <i>b- that</i> | <i>c- whose</i> | <i>d- whom</i> |
| 24. The play..... | | about the Prince of Denmark is called "Hamlet". | | |
| | <i>a- Shakespeare wrote it</i> | <i>b- Shakespeare wrote</i> | <i>d- Shakespeare wrote which</i> | |
| | <i>c- that Shakespeare wrote it</i> | | | |
| 25. The man..... | | let me park my car is kind. | | |
| | <i>a- who</i> | <i>b- which</i> | <i>c- whom</i> | <i>d- whose</i> |
| 26. This is the prize | | | | |
| | <i>a- I won</i> | <i>b- I won it</i> | <i>c- which won it</i> | <i>d- that I won it</i> |
| 27. This is a symphony | | I've heard several times over the last year. | | |
| | <i>a- who</i> | <i>b- whom</i> | <i>c- which</i> | <i>d- whose</i> |
| 28. She has a car..... | | was made in Germany. | | |
| | <i>a- who</i> | <i>b- whom</i> | <i>c- that</i> | <i>d- whose</i> |
| 29. My mother loves London. It's the city..... | | she was born. | | |
| | <i>a- who</i> | <i>b- which</i> | <i>c- that</i> | <i>d- where</i> |
| 30. Nada is the girl..... | | had a party last weekend. | | |
| | <i>a- that</i> | <i>b- which</i> | <i>c- where</i> | <i>d- what</i> |
| 31. There was a dog..... | | was making a lot of noise. | | |
| | <i>a- what</i> | <i>b- who</i> | <i>c- where</i> | <i>d- which</i> |
| 32. That's the shop..... | | I bought my new trousers. | | |
| | <i>a- which</i> | <i>b- that</i> | <i>c- where</i> | <i>d- who</i> |
| 33. Here's the letter..... | | arrived this morning. | | |
| | <i>a- whose</i> | <i>b- that</i> | <i>c- who</i> | <i>d- where</i> |
| 34. I'd like to live in a place..... | | the sun shines all the time. | | |
| | <i>a- which</i> | <i>b- that</i> | <i>c- who</i> | <i>d- where</i> |
| 35. Your doctor can give you a tablet..... | | will stop the pain. | | |
| | <i>a- where</i> | <i>b- who</i> | <i>c- that</i> | <i>d- what</i> |
| 36. The jeans were..... | | in the window were really expensive. | | |
| | <i>a- where</i> | <i>b- who</i> | <i>c- that</i> | <i>d- whose</i> |

37. The people..... saw the match were lucky.
a- where b- which c- that d- when
38. The shopping centre is the place.....I meet my friend at the weekend.
a- where b- who c- that d- what
39. The young actor,..... was 18 at the time, go part by sending the director a video tape.
a- who b- which c- whose d- which
40. The film.....I watched last week, was interesting.
a- who b- which c- whose d- what

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Ahmed, when has many customers in India, often goes there for holidays.
2. Ahmed's company, where he started in 1950, exports all over the world.
3. All the cars whose Germany makes are excellent.
4. Cairo, where is the capital of Egypt, is a great city.
5. Greg, where grew up in London, has lived in Egypt for 15 years.
6. He had to stay away from home for 18 months, which this was difficult for him.
7. He read the book which he bought it last week.
8. He went to Alexandria where he spent three weeks there.
9. I bought many things which I didn't like them all.
10. I don't understand that he is saying.
11. I saw a big house that It was on fire.
12. I watched the film which you told me about it.
13. I went to France where I did my PhD there.
14. I went to the town where I was born in.
15. It was fear who gave him his chance.
16. Mahmoud went to the school where he met his classmates there.
17. My brother booked a holiday to New York where he lived in for six months.
18. Nada won the tennis match who she played against Marwa.
19. Port Said is an excellent city where many tourists visit.
20. Tanta, whose is Egypt's fifth largest city, has many mosques.
21. That's the shop which I bought my new DVD player.
22. The animals whose are in the zoo are all endangered species.
23. The clothes, what are made of Egyptian cotton, are very good quality.
24. The match where I watched was very exciting.
25. The police found the person that he robbed the bank.
26. The theatre is a good place which you can spend a good time in it.
27. The university where I want to go to is near my uncle.
28. The where I want to go to is near my uncle.
29. They have started training for the match which it match will decide the championship.
- 30.
31. This is the neighborhood when I spent most of my childhood.

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

Young men, nowadays, don't know how to spend their leisure time profitably. They often waste their time keeping company with bad people who spoil their character. They sometimes fall into bad habits which may ruin their health and make them lead a miserable life.

.....

.....

The government is carrying out a lot of industrial and agricultural projects in Upper Egypt to provide job opportunities for the citizens there. By this way we can solve a lot of serious problems as unemployment that leads to dangerous way.

.....

.....

As we live in a technological age, anything seems possible. It took a long time to develop new ideas in the past but this is not so any longer. Progress in our present age depends mainly on computers without which it would be impossible.

Translate into English:

-الأمانة والإخلاص يمثلان أجمل الأشياء في العلاقات الإنسانية.

- المواطن الصالح مستعد دائما لخدمة بلده و الموت في سبيلها.

Test 7

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to the following situations:

1. A person you do not know arrives in your school. Ask if you can help them.
2. A tourist is visiting Cairo, you tell him about the places he could visit.
3. In class, you see a school friend who has been away for several weeks.
4. You ask your father about his journey to England.

2 - Say where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

1-A: What time will you be checking out tomorrow?

B: I have to leave early to catch my flight. I'd like a 6 a.m. wake-up call.

A: Well, you can check out tonight and I'll arrange it. I hope you have enjoyed your stay with us.

B: Yes, I have. Thank you.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

2- A: I'd like to deposit L.E. 500 in my savings account, please.

B : Of course. Just complete one of these forms and return to this counter.

A: Where can I fill in this form?

B: You can stand here next to the queue.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- Our fruithas increased since we started watering our plants more often.
a) yield b) field c) shield d) yell
- 2- The three biggest supermarket are used by 75% of the population.
a) chins b) chains c) chairs d) shares
- 3- My uncle has an important job. He is the engineer for a car company.
a) chef b) shift c) chief d) brief
- 4- of countries which export oil are meeting to discuss the economic situation.
a) Representatives b) Actors c) Actresses d) Artists
- 5- The situation in our country is improving.
a) economy b) economics c) economist d) economical
- 6- New businesses will hundreds of people in the city.
a) destroy b) employ c) enjoy d) expand
- 7- Companies can now goods all around the world.
a) distribute b) contribute c) attribute d) extinguish
- 8- E-mails help to improve the way companies with their customers.
a) translate b) persuade c) communicate d) commemorate
- 9- Is that the woman bag was stolen?
a) whose b) where c) who d) which
- 10- The President visited China he was warmly welcomed.
a) who b) which c) whose d) where
- 11- The dog barked it saw itself in a mirror.

- a) *which* b) *what* c) *who* d) *when*
 12- Egypt is the land people of different cultures can live peacefully.
 a) *who* b) *whose* c) *where* d) *which*
 13- Is that the flat was advertised in the paper last week?
 a) *where* b) *which* c) *when* d) *what*
 14- This is the book about I was talking to you.
 a) *who* b) *whom* c) *that* d) *which*
 15- The students get high marks can join the faculties they like.
 a) *who* b) *which* c) *whom* d) *whose*
 16- The government encourages the businessmen exports are competitive.
 a) *who* b) *that* c) *what* d) *whose*

4- Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. She has built up a shine
2. She was looking forward to seen the grandchildren again.
3. The plumber refused to take his fare.
4. I remember the day which my son was born.
5. The animals whose are in the zoo are all endangered species.
6. This is the neighborhood when I spent most of my childhood.
- 7.

C- Reading Comprehension

5- Read the passage then answer the questions:

Do we have the right to use animals in laboratory experiments? Using animals in medical research has many benefits. Animal research has enabled researchers to develop treatments for many diseases, such as heart diseases. It would not have been possible to develop vaccines for diseases like smallpox without animal research. Every drug anyone takes today was tried first on animals. Which is more important: the life of a rat or that of a three-year old child?

Last year, over twelve million animals had to be killed because nobody wanted them as pets. The fact is that human benefit cannot be used as a reason for using animals in research, any more than it can be used as a reason for experimenting on other humans. Animals suffer a lot during these experiments. They are forced to live in cages and they may be unable to move.

Animals have the same rights as humans do, to be able to move freely and not to have pain or fear forced on them.

Answer the following questions

- 1- Why is animal research useful?
- 2- How do animals suffer during experiments?
- 3- Are you for or against using animals in medical research? Why?

B) Choose the correct answer:

- 4- The idea against using animals in research is that
 a) the life of animals is more important than the life of humans.
 b) People should help to increase the number of animals.
 c) Researchers have to use animals in their medical research.
 d) Animals have the same rights as humans do.
- 5- An appropriate title of this passage would be.....
 a) Scientific Research b) Research Laboratories
 c) Animal Rights d) Human Rights

6- Read the passage then answer the questions:

Johnny was three when he ran away from home for the first time. Somebody left the garden gate open. Johnny wandered out, crossed some fields and two hours later, arrived in the next village. He was just able to give his name and address.

By the time he was seven, Johnny used to disappear from home two or three times a year. Generally the police brought him home. They used to ask him, "You aren't happy at home, are you?" Johnny answered, "Of course not. I just like travelling." His parents and his teachers used to watch him closely.

It is surprising that Johnny managed to get on board a plane. He was twelve at that time. A few hours later, Johnny found himself in Cairo. How did he get on board? No one knows! According to Johnny himself, it was easy: he just went into the airport and got on board the nearest plane.

Unit 8 - *The Necklace*

act	يمثل / تصرف / عمل	feel proud	يشعر بالفخر	occasionally	أحيانا
admiration	إعجاب	feel disappointed	يشعر بخيبة الأمل	once a week	مرة في الأسبوع
admire	يعجب بـ	final	نهائي	outdo	يفوق
appearance	مظهر	fireman	رجل إطفاء	outgrow	يفوقه في النمو
armed robbery	سرقة بالإكراه	flood (v/n)	فيضان - يفيض	outrun	يسبق - يتجنب
arms	أسلحة	force (v/n)	قوة - يجبر	oversee	يراقب - يشرف علي
army	جيش	formal occasion	مناسبة رسمية	oversleep	يفرط في النوم
ashamed	خجلان	franc	فرنك	overtake	يتجاوز (بالسيارة)
assume	يفترض	garage	جراج	overthrow	يقلب - يهزم
ball	حفلة رقص	go abroad	يسافر للخارج	partner	شريك
canoeing	التجديف بالقوارب	go canoeing	يذهب للتجديف	physical work	عمل بدني
certainly	بالتأكيد	go fishing	يذهب للصيد	poetry	الشعر
character	شخصية	government clerk	موظف حكومي	rectangular	علي شكل مستطيل
collection	مجموعة	grandparents	أجداد	repair = mend	يصلح
college = faculty	كلية	guest	ضيف	repay	يسدد ما عليه
conscience	ضمير	have a holiday	يقوم بإجازة	replacement	بديل
continuously	باستمرار	have a rest	يأخذ قسطا من	rights	حقوق
copy (n)	نسخة	heavy debts	ديون ثقيلة	savings	مدخرات
debts	ديون	host	مضيف	self-confidence	الثقة بالنفس
decade	عقد (10 سنوات)	hostess	مضيفة	separate	منفصل - يفصل
deceitful	خادع	hurricane	إعصار	several times	مرات عديدة
deceive	يخدع	identical	متطابق	shape (n)	شكل
definition	تعريف	identify	يتعرف علي	social position	مكاتب اجتماعية
diamond	ماس	impressive	مؤثر	specific	محدد
documents	مستندات	join the army	يلتحق بالجيش	the Roman numbers	الأرقام الرومانية
download	يحمل	lack	نقص - ينقصه	traditional	تقليدي
duties	واجبات	lake	بحيرة	twice a year	مرتان في العام
earthquake	زلازل	make money	يكون مالا	twins	توأم
except (for)	ما عدا	manual	يدوي	valuable	قيم
exhausted	منهك - مرهق	mental work	عمل ذهني	value (v/n)	قيمة - يقيم
face (v- n)	وجه - يواجه	necklace	عقد - قلادة	volcano	بركان

Definitions

act	- perform in a play. / - be a character in a film or play.	يمثل
admire	- have a very good opinion of someone.	يعجب
army	- Part of a country's military force that fights on land.	جيش
ball	- Large formal occasion when people dance.	حفلة راقصة
canoeing	- Activity or sport using a long narrow boat.	التجديف بالقوارب
collection	- A set of similar things that are kept together.	مجموعة
continuously	- Without stopping.	بأستمرار
except	- not including/	فيما عدا
identical	- Exactly the same.	متطابق
manual	- Type of work done by people using their hands.	يدوي
necklace	- A piece of jewellery worn around the neck.	عقد / قلادة
savings	- All the money that you have not spent.	مدخرات

Expressions

an invitation to	دعوة إلى	happy with/about	سعيد بشأن
at all times	في كل الأوقات	in the future	في المستقبل
at present	في الحاضر	in the past	في الماضي
attached to = joined to	موصول بـ	mix with people	يختلط بالناس
Borrow.. from	يقترض .. من	owe money to	يكون مدين بمال لـ
close to	قريب من	perform in a play	يقوم بالتمثيل في مسرحية
consist of	يتكون من	play with a toy	يلعب بلعبة
Describe something to someone	يصف شيء لشخص	set of things	مجموعة من الأشياء
fight for	يحارب من أجل	share ... with	يشارك في شيء مع
go on holiday	يذهب في أجازة	the way to success	الطريق إلى النجاح

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
Collect	مجموعة	Manual يدوي	Manually يدويا
Admire	إعجاب	Collective جماعي	Collectively بطريقة جماعية
		Admirable مثير للإعجاب	Admirably بشكل يثير الإعجاب

Words & antonyms

Old كبير السن	Young صغير	Narrow ضيق	wide واسع
free غير مشغول	Busy مشغول	Sufficient كاف	insufficient غير كاف
Initial أولي	Final نهائي	Interesting مثير للاهتمام	Boring ممل
Little قليل (لا يعد)	Much كثير	traditional تقليدي	Modern حديث
Few قليل (يعد)	Many كثير	continue يستمر	Stop يتوقف
the best الأفضل	the worst الأسوأ	open مفتوح	Closed مغلق
put on يرتدي	take off (ملابس) يخلع	Wet مبلل	Dry جاف
manual يدوي	Automatic آلي	Old قديم	New جديد
Clockwise	في اتجاه عقارب الساعة	Anticlockwise	عكس اتجاه عقارب الساعة

Important Vocabulary

alternative sources	مصادر بديلة	customs	عادات	scientific progress	تقدم علمي
benefits	فوائد	hard currency	عملة صعبة	social problems	مشكلات اجتماعية
budget	ميزانية	Investments	استثمارات	source of relief	مصدر ارتياح
Cloning	الاستنساخ	losses	خسائر	traditions	تقاليد
culture	الثقافة	profits	أرباح	treatment	معاملة / علاج

Language Notes

- way of + (v + ing) طريقة لـ - I tried different ways of solving the problem.
 - way to + مصدر طريقة لـ - I tried different ways to solve the problem.

- at the age of في عمر - She got married at the age of 25.
 - in the age of في عصر - In the age of Omer, the Islamic Empire expanded.

يشعر بالخجل من (شئ مخزى فعله)
ashamed of
Shy خجول بطبعه

- He has never felt a ashamed of what he has done.
- Girls are no longer shy in front of strangers.

يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء
- Stop to + inf
يتوقف عن عمل شيء
- Stop + v.ing.

- On my way to work,I stopped to buy a pen.
- She stopped eating carbohydrates.

- نستخدم (except) فقط قبل حروف الجر وأدوات الربط:

- I searched for the pencil except in the cupboard. - She is quiet except when she gets angry.
- يستخدم الاسم أو ضمير المفعول بعد (except / except for):
- Everybody understood except Ali. = Ali was the only student (one) who didn't understand.
- We are all ready to go except for her. = She is the only one who is not ready to go.
- لاحظ أن (except that) يأتي بعدها جملة:
- I know nothing about her except that she is married.

-Accept + n يقبل (accept an invitation / an apology / a present....etc.)
- I accepted his invitation to dinner.

- Expect to + inf. يتوقع - I expects to get full marks.
- Expect ... will -We expect that he will come first.

-تستخدم (fy / ify) لتكوين الفعل من بعض الكلمات:

solid	صلب	solidify	يحول لمادة صلبة	pure	نقي	purify	ينقي
Beauty	الجمال	beautify	يجمل	terror	رعب	terrify	يرعب
gas	غاز	gasify	يحول لغاز	liquid	سائل	liquefy	يحول لسائل

- تستخدم wear لوصف عادة أو مظهر الشخص:

-wear+obj مفعول.... . يلبس / يكون مرتديا
- Students usually wear a uniform. -We wear warm clothes in cold weather.
- put on+obj مفعول.... . يقوم بارتداء
-Put on your coat; it's cold. -I put on my uniform and went to school.
- dress = get dressed يلبس (بدون مفعول)
-She always dresses (gets dressed)fashionably.
- في حالة وجود مفعول بعد (dress) يصبح المعنى يساعد شخص علي ارتداء ملابسه :
- Can you dress the baby?
-be dressed in = be wearing يكون مرتديا (بعدها مفعول)
-I was dressed in a light clothes. = I was wearing white clothes.

- Suggest + (v+ ing) يقترح - He suggested going to the park.
- Suggest (that) + Sub+(should) + inf. -He suggested that I(should)leave soon.

- What + be + فاعل + like ...? = describe تستخدم هذه الصيغة للسؤال عن وصف شيء أو شخص
- What was life in Aswan like in the past? -What is Reem like?

- couple زوج (من شيء يمكن فصله)
-We invited the newly married couple to dinner. -I bought a couple of tea cups.
- pair زوج (من شيء لا ينفصل)
- Could you show me a pair of shoes?
- double ثنائي / مزدوج / يضاعف
-I doubled the speed of the car.
- twin توأم
-The looked as if they are twins.

-would you mind + ing = -would you mind if I +
-Would you mind lending me ten pounds? -Would you mind if I borrowed ten pounds

-write on يكتب عن - He wrote a composition on tourism.
-write for a newspaper يكتب في جريدة - He writes for Al-Ahram newspaper.

-make money from يكون / يجمع مالا من - Abu Terika made a lot of money from playing football.

Fight for يحارب من أجل - Mustafa Kamel fought for freedom, peace and independence.
fight against يحارب ضد - We should fight against illiteracy , poverty and disease.

جمله كاملة + that + صفة + so

- Aya is so clever that he can finish the test in ten minutes.

- إذا جاءت so في أول الجملة تكون على صيغة إستفهام :

- So clever is Aya that she can answer the test in ten minutes.

جمله كاملة + that + (اسم) or (اسم + صفة) + such a (an)

- Aya is such a clever student that she can answer the test in ten minutes.

- إذا جاءت such في أول الجملة تكون على صيغة إستفهام:

- Such a clever student is Aya that she can answer the test in ten minutes.

- Aya has such cleverness that she can answer the test in ten minutes.

(المصدر) + enough to + inf + صفة

- كاف لدرجة أن (تأتي في الإثبات وتعنى القدرة) .

- Aya is clever enough to answer the test in ten minutes.

(المصدر) + to + (صفة) + too + adj

- لدرجة أن لا (تأتي في النفي وتعنى الإستحالة) .

- Omer is so weak that he can't do a sport. = Omer is too weak to do a sport.

- عند إستخدام enough بدلا من too تأتي بعكس الصفة منفي .

- Omer is not strong enough to do a sport. - The girl is too lazy to do homework.

-The girl is not active enough to do homework.

Exercises

Respond to each of the following situation:

1. A friend asks you why you'd like to be a doctor.
2. A friend wants to know what job you would like to do when you leave school.
3. You are interviewing an older person about their education. What do you ask?
4. You are interviewing one of your grandparents for a school project. You want to know what his or her life was like when he or she was young. What do you ask?
5. You want some information about the story of the " Necklace"
6. You want to ask your grandfather if he was good at school.
7. You want to know if this grandparent did anything when he or she was not working.
8. You want to know when this person began their first job. What do you ask?
9. Your teacher asks you why you enjoy learning English.

where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

- 1- A: Why are you throwing this rubbish here? B: Well, what would you like me to do with it?
A: You should put it in the garbage bin.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 2- A: Excuse me, do you have these trousers in a larger size.
B: Just one moment, madam. I'll check. A: Thank you.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 3 A: who was the first to discover the circulation of the blood?
B: The famous physician , Ibn Nafis . A : What is his nationality? B : Syrian.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 4- A : You have some bad heart disorder. You need an operation.
B: What kind of operation? A : A heart transplant.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

Choose the correct answer from:

1. Honest people always try to.....the money they have borrowed.
a- repay b- replace c- take place d- pay oil
2. What advice would you..... to someone who thinks money can make her life better?
a- make b- advise c- give d- do
3. What does the poor man feel.....his wife?
a- for b- about c- on d- to
4. It is best to be honest.....all times.
a- in b- on c- at d- to
5. 5. How do you think she feels.....her life?
a- for b- about c- on d- at
6. His gold watch cost a lot of money. It is very
a- valuable b- favourable c- manual d- helpful
7. She is..... because she lost her friend's expensive necklace.
a- shy b- shameful c- ashamed d- shame
8. As you broke my game boy, you have to buy me a new one as a....
a- reserve b- replacement c- substitute d- change
9. They borrowed a lot of money which left them with heavy.....
a- credits b- debts c- savings d- loans
10. He feels proud because he has..... all his debts.
a- bought b- borrowed c- saved d- paid
11. Many people have holidays.....on rivers or lakes.
a- canoeing b- hiking c- collecting d- enjoying
12. 12. Nobody did homework Nada.
a- despite b- apart c- except d- but
13. He has studied.....for the last three days because he has exams tomorrow.
a- collectively b- continuously c- progressively d- Casually
14. When boys finish university, they join the.....to do the military service.
a- battle b- fight c- army d- team
15. Have you read Naguib Mahfouz's last.....of short stories?
a- gathering b- collection c- crowd d- mass
16. Before you take part in a film or play, you have to learn to
a- act b- show c- represent d- behave
17. Would you mind.....us about Maupassant's life?
a- telling b- to tell c- to telling d- tell
18. His life was boring except..... Sundays.
a- for b- on c- for on d- in
19. The novelist's new work sold 25000..... in the first year.
a- collections b- models c- patterns d- copies
20. Would you like to..... canoeing with us?
a- make b- go c- play d- have
21. What did you do.....your journey?
a- in b- at c- on d- upon
22. When he was young, he went..... every day.
a- to fish b- to fishing c- fishing d- fish
23. My cousins look exactly the same. They are..... twins.
a- similar b- identical c- typical d- the same
24. This morning, I received an invitation....a meeting at my college.
a- to b- for c- with d- on
25. When I lost all my money, I borrowed some.....my cousin.
a- for b- to c- from d- with
26. I had to work hard.....years before I could afford my car
a- from b- in c- for d- at
27. The trousers I'm wearing are made..... wool.
a- from b- by c- with d- of
28. Before he retired, my uncle worked.....a hospital doctor.
a- as b- like c- such as d- just like

29. Most government clerks are poor as they do not much money.
a- gain b- earn c- win d- succeed
30. I bought my sister a gold.....in her wedding party.
a- necklace b- collar c- diamond d- clerk
31. I really.....my grandfather. He has spent his life working to look after his family.
a- value b- admire c- evaluate d- wonder
32. I spent all my..... on the new car I bought.
a- savings b- safes c- debts d- reservations
33. work can be very tiring and it is not very well paid.
a- Automated b- Handy c- Handful d- Manual
34. We were invited to the..... and there would be a lot of dancing and singing.
a- ball b- conference c- meeting d- appointment
35. The husband suggests that his wife..... a nice dress from a rich friend.
a- borrows b- borrowing c- borrowed d- borrow
36. He was..... when he heard that his friend lost his life in a car accident.
a- shocked b- admired c- crashed d- shaken
37. People prefer..... light white clothes in summer.
a- wearing b- getting dressed c- putting on d- dressing
38. Liars never.....the truth.
a- say b- speak c- talk d- tell
39. People should be happy..... what they have.
a- of b- with c- on d- in
40. She lost her necklace.....the way home from the ball.
a- in b- at c- by d- on

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Ali and Peter look very similar accept that Ali is a little taller
2. As they are typical twins, they look exactly the same.
3. Before he retired, my uncle worked like a director for a big company.
4. Before you can be in a film or play, you have to learn to actor.
5. Did he use to do anything also as well as writing?
6. Handy work is very tiring and not profitable.
7. He bought me a new mobile as a place for the one he broke.
8. He didn't enjoy to work as a clerk in Paris.
9. He gave his wife enough money to buy a dress for the balloon.
10. He said "let us going for a walk".
11. He suggested to visit the museum.
12. How did you buy for your car?
13. How much money do you gain in your new job?
14. I can not tell you the true because I do not know it.
15. I do not have a car so I could not give you a lift.
16. I needed to know the meanings of some words so I loaned a dictionary from my friend.
17. I predict catching the bus because I get up early.
18. I really admit people who can work in such difficult conditions.
19. I really wonder my father as he has been working hard since his childhood.
20. I received an invitation for a wedding party.
21. I would like you lending me your book.
22. I'm too shy to tell her that I've lost her camera.
23. In Egypt, young men have to join the soldiers after they finish university.
24. Is the ring you are wearing made from gold?
25. It is forbid to smoke here.
26. Maupassant died in the age of 42.
27. Maupassant's first novel sold 25000 books in the first year.
28. My uncle keeps his borrowing in a bank.
29. People should be happy at what they have.
30. Swimming is an activity or sport using a long narrow boat.
31. That's not the way to doing it - let me show you.
32. The city is flooded because it has rained continua) for a year
33. The diamond necklace she is wearing is very evaluative.
34. The husband suggests that his wife cooks fish for lunch.

Grammar

Past Habits عادات الماضي

Used to + inf.

- Form** Subj. + used to + inf. المصدر
 - Hana used to study English. - I used to start work at 8 o'clock.
 - Ali and Mona used to go to Ras El-Bar in the summer.
- Negation** Subj. + didn't use to + inf. المصدر
 - Hana didn't use to study Turkish. - I didn't use to start work at 7 o'clock.
 - Ali and Mona didn't use to go to Aswan in the summer.
- Yes/No Q.** Did + Subj. + use to + inf. المصدر?
 - Did you use to start work at 8 o'clock ?
 - Yes, I did. - Yes, I used to start work at 8 o'clock.
 - No, I didn't. - No, I didn't use to start work at 8 o'clock.
 - No, I used to start work at 8:30.
- Wh-' Q.** Q.W. + did + Subj. + use to + inf. ?
 - What language did Hana use to study? - When did you use to start work?
 - Where did Ali and Mona use to go to in the summer?
- Pass. المجهول** Obj. + used to + be + P.P.
 - English used to be studied (by Hana).
 - Homework used to be done (by Nona) at five every day.

Uses

- تستخدم (used to) للتعبير عن شيء كان يحدث بانتظام و لم يعد يحدث الان (عادة في الماضي) :
- I used to smoke a packet a day but I stopped two years ago.
 - Tarik used to travel a lot in his job. - I used to drive to work but now I take the bus.
- و تستخدم ايضا للتعبير عن شيء كان حقيقيا و لم يعد كذلك الان:
- There used to be a cinema in the town but now there isn't.
 - She used to have really long hair but she's had it all cut off. - I didn't use to like him but now I do.
- لاحظ ان (used to do) تختلف عن (to be used to doing) و (to get used to):
- Subj. + be + used to+ doing/ n.
- تعبر هذه الصيغة عن ان شيء ما عادي و مألوف :
- I'm used to living on my own. I've done it for quite a long time.
 - Omer has lived in Aswan for over five years so he is used to its hot weather.
 - They've always lived in hot countries so they aren't used to the cold weather in Canada.
- Subj. + get / become + used to+ doing / n.
- تعبر هذه الصيغة عن عملية تعود الفاعل على شيء ما فيصبح بالنسبة له عادي و مألوف :
- I didn't understand the accent when I first moved here but I quickly got used to it.
 - She has started working at night and is still getting used to sleeping during the day.
 - I have always lived in the country but now I'm beginning to get used to living in the city.

Would Always

- يمكن استخدام (would always) ايضا للتعبير عن عادات الماضي :
- I would always take my hunting gun with me when I went to the country.
 = I used to take my hunting gun with me when I went to the country.
- تستخدم (would never) للتعبير عن ان شخص ما لم يفعل شيء ما مطلقا في الماضي:
- Walid would never pay for drinks when we went out together with our friends.

- لكن لاحظ ان (would always) تختلف عن (used to) في انها لا تعبر عن حقائق الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة:

- Sarah was shy, but now she is very outgoing. (Correct)
- Sarah used to be shy, but now she is very outgoing. (Correct)
- Sarah would always be shy, but now she is very outgoing. (Not Correct)

- لاحظ انه يمكن استخدام ظروف تكرار اخري غير (always) حسب المعني المقصود:

- Hamdy would constantly bring his son to the mosque.
- Hamdy would often bring his daughter to the mosque.
- Hamdy would occasionally bring his younger son to the mosque.
- Hamdy would seldom bring his sister to the mosque.
- Hamdy would never bring his wife to the mosque.

ملاحظات علي (used to)

- تستخدم (no longer) بدلا من (used to) ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المضارع البسيط:

- He used to smoke. = He no longer smokes.
- تستخدم (any more / any longer) بدلا من (used to) مع نفي الفعل في المضارع البسيط وتأتي في نهاية الجملة:
- He used to smoke. = He doesn't smoke any more.

- لاحظ الجمل التالية:

- He usually goes to school by bike. = He is used to going to school by bike.
- He didn't like milk when he was young, but he is used to it now.
- لاحظ في الجملة السابقة أنه يمكن استخدام اسم أو ضمير بعد (be used to):
- لاحظ أن (be used to) تأتي بمعنى "يستخدم لكي" بجملة مبنية للمجهول ويليه المصدر:

- Water is used to generate electricity.
- Wood is used to make paper.

لاحظ أن

(be) used to + v.ing = (be) in the habit of + ing

- He is in the habit of borrowing money from others. = He is used to borrowing money from others.

used to + inf. = was / were in the habit of + ing

- I used to hide under the bed. = I was in the habit of hiding under the bed.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer :

38. I have long hair.
a- would b- used to c- was used to d- got used to
39. I want to be a teacher but now I think I'll be a doctor.
a- used b- used to c- would d- go used to
40. He have a Ford. Now he's got a BMW.
a- would b- used c- would use d- used to
41. I to eat vegetables, but now I eat a lot.
a- didn't use b- am not used c- wasn't used d- don't use
42. He always feels cold because he is used to.....in a warmer country.
a- live b- living c- having lived d- lives
43. A knife is used to.....things like meat and cheese.
a- cut b- cutting c- have cut d- having cut
44. It took him years to get used to..... on the right.
a- drive b- driving c- drove d- drives
45. I my friend for ages.
a- didn't see b- haven't been seeing c- haven't seen d- am not seeing
46. When I was young, I..... eat a lot of ice cream.
a- using to b- used to c- using d- had used to
47. When I was young, we.....live in a small village.
a- used to b- were used to c- got used to d- are used to
48. I..... play tennis a lot but I don't play very often now.
a- was used to b- am used to c- got used to d- used to
49. Dianatravel a lot. These days she doesn't go away so often.
a- used to b- was used to c- is used to d- got used to
50. Do you go to the cinema very often? Not now, but I

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>a- used to</i> | <i>b- am used to</i> | <i>c- was used to</i> | <i>d- got used</i> |
|-------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
51. This building is now a furniture shop, it used to.....a cinema.
- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|
| <i>a- be</i> | <i>b- being</i> | <i>c- was</i> | <i>d- is being</i> |
|--------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|
52. I used to think he.....unfriendly but now I realise he's a very nice person.
- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>a- is</i> | <i>b- has been</i> | <i>c- was</i> | <i>d- were</i> |
|--------------|--------------------|---------------|----------------|
53. I've started drinking coffee recently. I never used to.....it before.
- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| <i>a- like</i> | <i>b- being like</i> | <i>c- liking</i> | <i>d- liked</i> |
|----------------|----------------------|------------------|-----------------|
54. Janet.....have very long hair when she was a child.
- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>a- used to</i> | <i>b- was used to</i> | <i>c- got used to</i> | <i>d- is used to</i> |
|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
55. Liza.....a motorbike, but last year she sold it and bought a car.
- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>a- is used to having</i> | <i>b- used to have</i> | <i>c- wasn't used to having</i> | <i>d- used to having</i> |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
56. We.....live in Cairo a few years ago. We have been living in Alex all our life.
- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>a- used to</i> | <i>b- didn't use to</i> | <i>c- are used to</i> | <i>d- have used to</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
57. I rarely eat ice cream now but I.....eat it when I was a child.
- | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| <i>a- am used to</i> | <i>b- was used to</i> | <i>c- got used to</i> | <i>d- used to</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
58. Jim.....be my best friend but we aren't friends any longer.
- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>a- used to</i> | <i>b- got used to</i> | <i>c- is used to</i> | <i>d- was used to</i> |
|-------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
59. Jane had to get used to on the left.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>a- drive</i> | <i>b- driving</i> | <i>c- be driving</i> | <i>d- have driven</i> |
|-----------------|-------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
60. I'm the boss here! I'm not used to.....told what to do.
- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| <i>a- be</i> | <i>b- have been</i> | <i>c- is being</i> | <i>d- being</i> |
|--------------|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
61. Tom used to.....a lot of coffee. Now he prefers tea.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| <i>a- drink</i> | <i>b- have been drinking</i> | <i>c- be drinking</i> | <i>d- drinking</i> |
|-----------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
62. Where did you..... to live?
- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|
| <i>a- used</i> | <i>b- using</i> | <i>c- use</i> | <i>d- be used</i> |
|----------------|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|
63. I didn't.....to drink coffee when I was young.
- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------------|
| <i>a- used</i> | <i>b- using</i> | <i>c- be used</i> | <i>d- use</i> |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------------|

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. A pen is used to writing with.
2. Ali used to playing tricks on his young brother.
3. Did she use to phoning her friends on Fridays?
4. He didn't use to smoking 20 cigarettes a day.
5. He didn't used to help his friends.
6. He isn't used to having any guests, but now he has parties every weekend.
7. He used to enjoying fishing.
8. He's not used to drink so much coffee.
9. Huda isn't used to watch TV in the afternoon.
10. I don't use to play computer games, but now I play them occasionally.
11. I feel very full after that meal as I'm not used to eat so much.
12. I get used to have a car but I sold it a few months ago.
13. I used not to play tennis twice a week.
14. I was used to live in Alexandria when I was young.
15. I wasn't used to like vegetables.
16. I wouldn't like to share an office because I'm used to have my own office.
17. Mena was used to do exercise every morning.
18. My grandpa was used to read the paper in the evening.
19. People used to work very long hours, but now they work so many hours.
20. She didn't used to clean the house every week.
21. She didn't used to do the washing up.
22. She is used to get up early every Friday.
23. She used to driving her car for long distances.
24. The cities are used to being smaller, but now they are much bigger.
25. There used to being a cinema here but it was knocked down a few years ago.
26. There uses to be a hotel opposite the station but it closed a long time ago.
27. They don't use to go camping for a holiday, but now they stay in the best hotels.
28. We used to living in a small village but now we live in London.
29. When I was a child, I used making sand castles on the beach.

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

Tourism industry has become a necessity for Egypt . There is an attitude to develop tourism in Sinai due to the existence of natural and religious attractions . A plan has been put to exploit tourist areas to attract more tourists .

The engineers' job is a hard one. They work outside in the heat with noise of machinery. But, they make the infrastructure of the nation. The roads, bridges and dams that they build will be good for their country.

Young men, nowadays, don't know how to spend their leisure time profitably. They often waste their time keeping company with bad people who spoil their character. They sometimes fall into bad habits which may ruin their health and make them lead a miserable life.

Translate into English:

- إن مشروع الدلتا الجديدة سوف يساعد مصر في حل مشاكلها الاقتصادية

- تسعى الدولة إلى توفير الآلاف من فرص العمل للشباب

- يجب أن نتعلم الكثير من الأشياء من قصة " القلادة " مثل أن يحاول الفقراء تحسين أنفسهم وأن نكون أمناء طوال الوقت وأن العمل الجاد هو الطريق إلى السعادة الحقيقية

- الأمانة من أهم صفات الإنسان

- تصدر بلادنا الكثير من المنتجات الجيدة إلى الخارج في كل عام

Test 8

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to the following situations:

10. A relative wants to know the best thing about your school.
11. Someone asks you whether you used to go to school by bus or not.
12. You ask you aunt if she did anything when she was not working.
13. You ask your grandmother what her life was when she was young.

2- Say where these mini-dialogues are taking place and who the speakers are:

- 1- A: Can you show me where I can try this dress on?

B: The fitting rooms are on the left over there.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 2- A: How long have you been feeling unwell?

B: Since Sunday.

A: Well, you need to take one of these tablets three times a day and rest for three days.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- I'm afraid I can't a holiday this year.
a) buy b) pay c) afford d) earn
- 2- There are many pictures in the museum. Some are 1,000 years old.
a) valuable b) cheap c) rich d) high
- 3- The two fought against each other on land for many years in a terrible war.

- a) navies b) armies c) soldiers d) teams
- 4- I think that I did very well in the maths examination, for Question 4, which I did not know the answer for.
a) including b) except c) unless d) however
- 5- A is a long, narrow boat which is used to ride down rivers. You can use it for fishing, or as part of an exciting sport.
a) debt b) manual c) canoe d) raft
- 6- My mother wants to give me and my brother a key to the house, so she will need to make two of her key.
a) copies b) replacements c) extras d) additions
- 7- Our teacher was sick, so today we had a(n) teacher.
a) second b) replaced c) replacement d) extra
- 8- If you put twenty pounds away in a safe place every week, after some years you will have quite a lot of
a) valuable b) savings c) earnings d) money
- 9- I'm not very good remembering people's names.
a) in b) at c) with d) on
- 10- In the past, many people to pay for things in cash.
a) use b) uses c) using d) used
- 11- Before the invention of cars, people to walk more.
a) used b) use c) are used d) have used
- 12- bite your nails when you were a child?
a) Did you used to b) Would you c) Had you d) Did you use to
- 13- I all my free time on Saturday tidying up my bedroom.
a) was spending b) use to spend c) used to spend d) spent
- 14- Did your mother before she had children?
a) use to work b) used to work c) had worked d) would work
- 15- Ehab all his homework before he went on holiday with his family.
a) used to finish b) use to finish c) was finishing d) finished
- 16- I live in Egypt. When I was younger, my family lived in France.
a) didn't always used to b) didn't always use to
c) hadn't always d) wasn't always

4- Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

- 1- John is used to driving a ten-year-old small car, but now he drives a big new one.
- 2- It is too a polluted area that no one can live there.
- 3- People are used to travelling by horse and cart, but now they travel by cars.
- 4- Ayman died at the old of 15.
- 5- Can you give me a twin of black shoes?
- 6- He is used to play well.

C- Reading Comprehension

5- Read the passage then answer the questions:

Nearly everything we do in the modern world is controlled by computers. Computers are far more efficient than human beings and they have very good memories and can store huge amounts of information. In addition to that, computers can do calculations in a fraction of time and can do many of the things we do, but faster and more accurately. That is why computers are widely used nowadays.

Computers are used in many fields such as the field of health, arts and science. In the field of health, we use computers a lot in medicine nowadays. With the help of computers, doctors can keep patients' records on a computer and any information about the patient can be obtained quickly and easily, besides working out what is wrong with a patient or the best treatment to give him or her.

In the field of science, computers are generally associated with the world of science, maths, history and literature. You tell the computer which subject you are interested in and it supplies you with information in seconds.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why is the modern world controlled by computers?
- 2- How is computer helpful in the field of medicine?
- 3- Find words in the passage which mean: a) provide b) cure

Choose the correct answer:

4- Computers can store ----- amounts of information.

- a) few b) massive c) little d) a few

5- ----- everything we do in the world is controlled by computers.

- a) Rarely b) Early c) Almost d) Never

6- Read the passage then answer the questions:

Egypt has made rapid progress in education because the future prosperity of any country lies in the hands of its children. It is therefore necessary to give the children all the knowledge and ability they will need in order to serve their country well when they have grown up. That's why Egypt has opened schools and institutes for the blind, dumb and physically handicapped children.

One thing that always strikes a visitor to the schools is the modern style of architecture and the up-to-date equipment. The science laboratories and gymnasiums are excellently equipped and assemble halls with a proper stage encourage cultural activities.

The development of education for girls has probably made more rapid progress in Egypt . More educated women will want to work as secretaries, teachers, journalists or in offices and shops.

The ministry of education has not forgotten the thousands of people who are too old to take advantage of this fine new system of schools. Many of these schools are used in the evening by adults.

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- What depends on the children of the country?
- 2- What is the school visitor always impressed by?
- 3- What will educated girls want to work?

B. Choose the correct answer:

4- There are special schools for the -----

- a) Deaf b) dumb c) blind d)all mentioned

5- Many schools are used in the evening for the ----- education.

- a) adults' b) children's c) girls' d) teenagers'

D- The Novel

7) (A) Answer the following questions:

1- The farmer's son picked Gulliver up and held him by his legs. The farmer was angry. Why did Gulliver ask the farmer (through signs) not to punish the boy?

2- How did Gulliver react to the cat? What does this tell you about Gulliver?

B- Read the following quotation. then answer the questions

"I remembered Lilliput, a place where I had thought I was so strong and important. And now I would perhaps be food for enormous giants. I realised that nothing is big or small unless you compare it with something else."

- 1- When did Gulliver think these words to himself?
- 2- How is this land different from Lilliput?
- 3- Why does he think nothing is big or small unless you compare it with something else?

c) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences:

10- A small pigmy was walking into the sea towards the small boat as fast as he could.

11- Wheat which was about twelve centimetres high.

E- Writing

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

"How has the internet affected our lives?"

F- Translation

9- A) Translate into Arabic:

It is now clear that pollution has become a serious problem. It has harmful effects on human beings as well as other living creatures. Conferences are held every now and then to think of ways to get rid of pollution.

B) Translate into English:

- إن زيادة الإنتاج هي السبيل الوحيد لبناء المجتمع المثالي الذي نسعى إليه
- إن تحويل الصحراء إلى أرض خضراء يساعد على زيادة الدخل القومي وتوفير فرص العمل للشباب

Unit 9 - The Olympics

accommodation	الإقامة	festival	مهرجان	publicity	دعاية / شهرة / شعبية
achievements	إنجازات	focus	بؤرة / مركز	qualities	صفات
alternative	بديل	foundation	أساس	race	سباق
amateur	هاوي	get started	يبدأ	referee	حكم
anchor	يُثبَّت	global trade	التجارة العالمية	regularly	بانتظام
appreciate	يُقدَّر	globalization	العولمة	relevant	ملانم / متعلق
archaeologist	عالم آثار	gloves	قفاز	religious	ديني
athletes	رياضيون	gymnastic	رياضي / متعلق	rely on = depend on	يعتمد علي
attend	يحضر	hero	بطل	reputation	سمعة
BC	قبل الميلاد	heroine	بطلة	require = need	يتطلب / يحتاج
benefit	يستفيد / يفيد / فائدة	highlight	الجزء الأفضل / الأهم	rival = competitor	منافس
boxing	الملاكمة	host	يستضيف / مضيف	route	طريق
break a record	يحطم رقم قياسي	hunt for food	يصطاد للغذاء	scenery	مناظر طبيعية
bronze medal	ميدالية برونزية	identity	هوية	security	امن
caravan	قافلة	image	صورة	self-control	ضبط النفس
Career	الحياة المهنية	include	يشمل	shake	يهز / يرج
celebrate	يحتفل	individual	فرد / فردي	silk	الحرير
champion	بطل	industry	الصناعة	spices	التوابل
championship	بطولة	interests	اهتمامات / ميول	sports	مهرجان رياضي
chess	الشطرنج	international	دولي	sportsman	شخص رياضي
chessboard	لوحة الشطرنج	involve	يتضمن	sportswoman	سيدة رياضية
choice	اختيار	judo	رياضة الجودو	stadium	الإستاد
circles	دوائر	linesman	مساعد الحكم	take off	تقلع - يخلع
concentration	تركيز	local transport	مواصلات محلية	take part in	يشترك في
confusion	ارتباك	long distance runner	عداء مسافات طويلة	take place	يحدث
conquer	يتغلب علي- يفزو	misunderstandi	سوء فهم	take turns	يأخذ دوره
contact by e-mail	يتصل بالبريد الالكتروني	motorized transport	النقل بالعربات	the Olympic sign	الرمز الاولمبي
creation	خلق / تكوين	muscles	عضلات	the Olympics	الألعاب الأولمبية
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	netball	لعبة كرة الشبكة	Pan Arab Games	دورة الألعاب العربية
destroy	يدمر	opponent	خصم	travel by air	يسافر جوا
discovery	اكتشاف	ordinary	الناس	travel by sea	يسافر بحرا
drop	يُسقط	other than	غير / ما عدا	try a new	يجرب رياضة جديدة
electrical goods	سلع كهربائية	poem	قصيدة	TV coverage	تغطية تلفزيونية
endurance	التحمل	pollute	يلوث	warm	ترحيب حار
equal chances	فرص متكافئة	pollution	التلوث	water skiing	التزلج علي الماء
exercise	يتدرب / تدريب	professional	محترف	water sports	العاب مائية

Important Vocabulary

civilians	المدنيين	pedestrians	المشاة
cost of living	تكلفة المعيشة	prevent	يمنع
elderly people	كبار السن	priority	أولوية
encourage	يشجع	revolution	ثورة
Mass destruction weapons	أسلحة الدمار الشامل	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
mega project	مشروع عملاق	The United Nations	الأمم المتحدة
passer-by	أحد المارة	World Health Organization	منظمة الصحة العالمية

Expressions

aspire to	يتطلع إلى	on a large scale	على نطاق واسع
at a reasonable price	بسعر معقول أو رخيص	on a small scale	على نطاق محدود
at that time	في ذلك الوقت	participate in	يشترك في
at the side of the road	على جانب الطريق	pay for	يدفع ثمن ..
be based in	يكون مقرها في	play for a team	يلعب لفريق
be based on	معتمد على	prepare for + n.	يستعد من أجل
be exposed to	يكون معرض لـ	prepare to + inf.	يستعد لـ
be willing to	راغب في	sail through the Suez Canal	يبحر عبر قناة السويس
Exchange... For...	يبادل شيء بآخر	suitable for	مناسب لـ
Exchange...with...	يبادل شيء مع شخص	switch off = turn off	يغلق (جهاز مثلا)
harmful to	ضار لـ	tend to	يميل الي
have access to	يمكنه استخدام (الانترنت مثلا)	throw someone onto the ground	يطرح شخصا على الأرض
have contact with	لديه اتصال بـ	turn on = switch on	يشغل (جهاز مثلا)
in ancient times	في العصور القديمة	win a medal for	يفوز بميدالية في
interested in	مهتم بـ	with the help of	بمساعدة
look up	يبحث عن معلومة	work at his computer	يعمل على الكمبيوتر

Derivatives

Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
Benefit يفيد / يستفيد	Benefit فائدة	beneficial مفيد	
Collaborate يتعاون	Collaboration التعاون	Collaborative تعاوني	collaboratively بشكل تعاوني
Compete تنافس	Competition منافسة competitor متسابق	competitive تنافسي	competitively بشكل تنافسي
Cooperate يتعاون	Cooperation التعاون	Cooperative تعاوني	cooperatively بشكل تعاوني

Words & antonyms كلمات ومضامير

accurate	دقيق	inaccurate	غير دقيق
ancient	قديم	modern	حديث
approve of	يوافق علي	disapprove of	لا يوافق علي
at first	أولا	at last	أخيرا
do well	يُحسن الأداء	do badly	يؤدي بشكل سيء
fair	عادل	unfair	غير عادل
healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي
honesty	أمانة	dishonesty	عدم الأمانة
horizontal	أفقي	vertical	رأسي
late	متأخر	early	مبكر
light	مضيء	dark	مظلم
organized	منظم	disorganized	غير منظم
particularly	وخصوصا	generally	بصفة عامة
pass	ينجح	fail	يرسب
permanent	دائم	temporary	مؤقت
physical	بدني	mental	ذهني / عقلي
precise	دقيق	imprecise	غير دقيق
present	حاضر	absent	غائب
suitable	مناسب	unsuitable	غير مناسب
true	حقيقي / صحيح	false	زائف / غير حقيقي / خطأ
win	يفوز	lose	يخسر

Definitions

Amateur	- Someone who does something because they enjoy it.	هاو / غير محترف
Benefit	- be helped by something.	يستفيد
Boxing	- a sport in which two men wearing gloves hit each other.	الملاكمة
Bronze medal	- A medal for being third in an Olympic race.	ميدالية برونزية
Career	the period of time in your life you spend working	الحياة المهنية
Destroy	- damage something very badly.	يحطم
Exercise	- Physical activity which helps people stay healthy.	تدريب / تمرين
Festival	- a time when people celebrate something.	مهرجان
Highlight	- the most interesting, enjoyable part of something/	الجزء الرئيسي
Judo	- a sport in which two people try to throw each other onto the ground	الجودو
Professional	- Someone who earns money from doing an activity.	محترف
Regularly	- often; every day, every week, every month, etc.	بانتظام
Take part	- do an activity with other people.	يشارك

Language Notes

- لاحظ استخدام المقطع (-en) لتكوين الفعل من بعض الكلمات:

large	كبير	enlarge	يكبر/يضخم	courage	شجاعة	encourage	يشجع
able	قادر	enable	يمكن	danger	خطر	Endanger	يعرض للخطر
broad	واسع	broaden	وسع	length	طول	lengthen	يطول
weak	ضعيف	weaken	يضعف	short	قصير	shorten	يقصر
wide	متسع	widen	يوسع	strong	قوى	strengthen	يقوى

Every كل (صفة يأتي بعدها اسم) - Every child should be fed carefully.
Each كل (صفة يأتي بعدها اسم مفرد أو تحل محل الاسم) - Each child should be fed carefully. - All her friends came to the party. Each gave her a present.
 - لاحظ أن كلمة each يأتي بعدها مفرد أما every فيأتي بعدها مفرد أو عدد :
 - I go to the park every week. - She takes this medicine every four hours.
 - لا يستخدم حرف جر قبل كلمة everywhere :
 - I looked for my book everywhere, but I couldn't find it.

invent يخترع شيء جديد لم يكن موجود من قبل
 - Graham Bell invented the telephone.
discover يكتشف شيء كان موجود ولكنه غير معروف
 - Columbus discovered America.
explore يستكشف شيء غريب و يعرف شيء عنه
 - I'm keen on exploring the Sinai desert .

- تستخدم صفة بعد أفعال الحواس:

صفة. (smell / taste / feel / sound / look) + Adj.
 - My blouse feels soft. - Your perfume smells beautiful. - The food they served tasted delicious.
 - يمكن استخدام أفعال الحواس كأسماء و في هذه الحالة يستخدم معها الفعل have:
 - My blouse has a soft feel. - Your perfume has a beautiful smell.
 - The food they served had a delicious taste.

- وتستخدم صفة أيضا بعد الأفعال الآتية:

Be - seem - appear - sound - She's patient with children. - He seems ill today.
 appear - seem (to be) + صفة or (اسم + صفة) يبدو
 - He appears/seems (to be) clever. - He appears / seems (to be) a clever student.
 لاحظ :- يمكن استخدام to be اختياريا بعدهما.

Insist on + v.ing / n. يصر على
insist that + فاعل + should + مصدر

- He insisted on going to the park .

-He insisted that I should wait .

- I'm afraid = I'm sorry to say (that).....

-I'm afraid I can't go with you.

= I'm sorry to say that I can't go with you.

- hear / watch / see + obj. + inf. / v.ing

-I saw him running in the street.

-I saw him run in the street.

-Together with = including وهذا يشمل/ بما في ذلك

- We prepared everything for the party, together with (including) drinks.

- Achieve a goal يحقق هدف (في الحياة)

- The new project achieved its goal.

- Score a goal يسجل هدف (في مباراة مثلا)

- Zedan scored two goals in yesterday's match.

- تستخدم (play) غالبا مع الالعاب التي تستخدم فيها الكرة:

- Play (football, basketball, hockey, soccer, tennis, squash, table-tennis... etc.

- تستخدم (go) غالبا مع الرياضات التي تنتهي بـ (ing):

-Go (swimming/ jogging = جرى بطى / slow running/ sailing / dancing / hunting/ riding/ water-skiing

running/scuba-diving/ climbing) يتزحلق على الماء

- لاحظ أنه إذا كانت الرياضة المنتهية بـ ing يسبقها (a lot of / some / any) نستخدم (do):

- I did some jogging last week.

- Do (gymnastics / karate / judo / athletics / sports.....)

- تستخدم (do) مع الرياضات الأخرى:

وتستخدم (do/play) مع كلمة (sport):

-Do you do (play) any sports? Yes, I play hockey.

- يمكن استخدام (been) بدلا من (gone) مع الرياضات المنتهية بـ (ing):

- Have you ever gone swimming? / Have you ever been swimming?

- Provide (something) for يوفر شيء لـ

- The government should provide jobs for young men.

- Provide (someone) with يمد أو يزود شخص بـ

-The government should provide young men with jobs.

- decade عقد 10 سنوات

- A decade is a period of ten years.

- Century قرن 100 عام

- A period of 100 years is known as a century.

- millennium ألفية 1000 سنة

- A period of 1000 years is called a millennium.

- BC (Before Christ) قبل الميلاد

- AD (Anno Domini) بعد الميلاد

-The original Olympic Games took place in Greece from around 776 BC to AD 393.

ملاحظة السنة تأتي قبل BC وبعد AD كما في المثال السابق.

6- Making Suggestions عمل الاقتراحات

- 1) Why don't you / we + inf.
- 2) You / we could + inf.
- 3) Let's + inf.
- 4) Shall we + inf.
- 5) What about + v.ing?
- 6) How about + v.ing?
- 7) I suggest you / we take all the factors into consideration before we decide.

Agreeing with suggestions قبول الاقتراحات

- That's a good / fantastic idea
- I'll go along with that.
- I agree.
- That's what I think.
- OK
- That sounds fine.

Disagreeing with suggestions رفض الاقتراحات

- I'm not very keen.
- I'm not sure about that.
- Maybe some other time
- I'd rather
- No, I'd prefer to

Exercises

Respond to each of the following situation:

57. A school friend suggests going to the beach tomorrow. You don't want to go to the beach, but would like to play chess. What do you say?
58. Someone asks you what your father does.
59. You want Ahmed to tell you about the subjects he studies at school.
60. You would like to go on a family trip to Alexandria. Make this suggestion to your father.
61. Your father smokes a lot.
62. Your friend has bad headache.
63. Your friend suggests playing squash, you don't like the idea.
64. Your teacher asks you about your favourite sport.

Where these mini-dialogues take place and who the speakers are:

- 1- A: It's nice to see you. I wish you a speedy recovery.
 B: Thanks a lot. It's kind of you to visit me. A: When will you leave? B: In two days' time.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 2- A: What are you watching my son? B: It's the final football match.
 A: Have you finished your homework? B: Yes, I have. My mother checked it.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 3- A: So you want to borrow L.E 20000. Why do you want the the money?
 B: I want to buy some more land. Thus, I can expand my business.
 A: well, we can certainly lend you the money, but we need to see a business plan to show that you can repay the money within the next five years.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 4- A: hell! Can I help you, sir? B: Yes, I'd like to have a single room, please?
 A: With or without a bathroom? B: With a bathroom

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

Choose the correct answer:

1. He watched the match on TV. However, he could have watched it in the
 a- radio b- stadium c- pitch d- court
2. He is always fit because he does exercise.....
 a- regular b- regularly c- regulation d- regulated
3. Sports can make the world a..... place.
 a- peaceful b- dangerous c- possible d- religious
4. He spent most of his.....as a banker in Saudi Arabia.
 a- job b- career c- work d- profession
5. A: What about going to the club? B: Good idea. I'll go.....that.
 a- along b- with c- along with d- long with
6. Will you.....part in the next reading competition?
 a- make b- do c- have d- take
7. I tried to call you but your phone was off.
 a- returned b- changed c- turned d- done
8. He looked so proud when he..... his medal.
 a- awarded b- received c- rewarded d- granted
9. Have you ever..... judo?
 a- gone b- made c- done d- played
10. Hesham Mesbah..... the bronze medal for judo in 2008.
 a- gained b- earned c- won d- beat
11. In our class, we usually take...to answer the teacher's questions.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>a- care</i> | <i>b- place</i> | <i>c- part</i> | <i>d- turns</i> |
|----------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
12. When will your plane take?
- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>a- of</i> | <i>b- in</i> | <i>c- off</i> | <i>d- away</i> |
|--------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
13. Farmers always take..... of their animals.
- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>a- care</i> | <i>b- turns</i> | <i>c- place</i> | <i>d- part</i> |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
14. He couldn't take.....in the competition as he was very ill.
- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>a- care</i> | <i>b- turns</i> | <i>c- place</i> | <i>d- part</i> |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
15. The first Olympic Games took.....in Greece.
- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>a- care</i> | <i>b- turns</i> | <i>c- place</i> | <i>d- part</i> |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
16. International sport can.....individuals and their families.
- | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| <i>a- afford</i> | <i>b- admire</i> | <i>c- benefit</i> | <i>d- distribute</i> |
|------------------|------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
17. is a sport in which two men wearing gloves hit each other.
- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| <i>a- Boxing</i> | <i>b- Wrestling</i> | <i>c- Judo</i> | <i>d- Exercise</i> |
|------------------|---------------------|----------------|--------------------|
18.is the period of time in your life you spend working.
- | | | | |
|---------------|----------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| <i>a- Job</i> | <i>b- Profession</i> | <i>c- Career</i> | <i>d- occupation</i> |
|---------------|----------------------|------------------|----------------------|
19. The Olympic Games are a..festival which takes place every four years.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| <i>a- sport</i> | <i>b- sporting</i> | <i>c- sportive</i> | <i>d- sports</i> |
|-----------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|
20. Egypt is famous.....growing cotton.
- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| <i>a- with</i> | <i>b- by</i> | <i>c- for</i> | <i>d- on</i> |
|----------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
21. He..... the world record for running last month.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| <i>a- broke</i> | <i>b- destroyed</i> | <i>c- crashed</i> | <i>d- smashed</i> |
|-----------------|---------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
22. Exercise is good.....you.
- | | | | |
|--------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| <i>a- to</i> | <i>b- for</i> | <i>c- with</i> | <i>d- at</i> |
|--------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
23. The earthquake.....a lot of houses in our city.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| <i>a- broke</i> | <i>b- conquered</i> | <i>c- destroyed</i> | <i>d- crashed</i> |
|-----------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
24. The Olympic Games were.... of a religious festival in ancient Greece.
- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>a- a part</i> | <i>b- the part</i> | <i>c- parts</i> | <i>d- part</i> |
|------------------|--------------------|-----------------|----------------|
25. Boxing is an example of a/an.....sport.
- | | | | |
|------------------|------------------|----------------------|----------------|
| <i>a- single</i> | <i>b- double</i> | <i>c- individual</i> | <i>d- team</i> |
|------------------|------------------|----------------------|----------------|
26. My cousin is interested.....music.
- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| <i>a- on</i> | <i>b- in</i> | <i>c- at</i> | <i>d- with</i> |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
27. During the second century BC, the Olympic Games their religious meaning.
- | | | | |
|----------------|------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| <i>a- lost</i> | <i>b- missed</i> | <i>c- wasted</i> | <i>d- conquered</i> |
|----------------|------------------|------------------|---------------------|
28. Basketball is an example of a/an..... sport.
- | | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>a- religious</i> | <i>b- individual</i> | <i>c- group</i> | <i>d- team</i> |
|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------|----------------|
29. The World Cup takes place.....four years.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------------|----------------|---------------|
| <i>a- every</i> | <i>b- within</i> | <i>c- each</i> | <i>d- all</i> |
|-----------------|------------------|----------------|---------------|
30. Diving is..... sport.
- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------|
| <i>a- a pair</i> | <i>b- a group</i> | <i>c- an individual</i> | <i>d- a team</i> |
|------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|------------------|
31. The Olympic Games games were part of a.....festival held at the Olympic stadium.
- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| <i>a- religion</i> | <i>b- religious</i> | <i>c- historic</i> | <i>d- history</i> |
|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
32. In sports.....athletes are not paid.
- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>a- poor</i> | <i>b- amateur</i> | <i>c- professional</i> | <i>d- competitive</i> |
|----------------|-------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
33. Basketball is a kind.....sport.
- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| <i>a- of</i> | <i>b- by</i> | <i>c- from</i> | <i>d- to</i> |
|--------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|
34. The.....of our tour was visiting the sites in Luxor and Aswan.
- | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>a- highlight</i> | <i>b- festival</i> | <i>c- career</i> | <i>d- competition</i> |
|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
35. The film.....is held regularly to give prizes to the best actors.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| <i>a- feast</i> | <i>b- celebration</i> | <i>c- festival</i> | <i>d- carnival</i> |
|-----------------|-----------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
36. My favourite.....is football.
- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| <i>a- sport</i> | <i>b- came</i> | <i>c- match</i> | <i>d- competition</i> |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
37. Which team.....the match?
- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|------------------|------------------|
| <i>a- beat</i> | <i>b- won</i> | <i>c- gained</i> | <i>d- earned</i> |
|----------------|---------------|------------------|------------------|
38. A/An..... is a sudden violent shake of the earth.
- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| <i>a- volcano</i> | <i>b- tornado</i> | <i>c- earthquake</i> | <i>d- thunderstorm</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
39.athletes are paid a lot of money.
- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| <i>a- Amateur</i> | <i>b- Professional</i> | <i>c- Technical</i> | <i>d- Powerful</i> |
|-------------------|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|

40. All.....in the race hope to win the gold medal.
a- fighters b- enemies c- archaeologists d- competitors
41.study ancient cultures by the analysis of the remains found in the ground.
a- Explorers b- Archaeologists c- inventors d- Discoveries
42. Who.....America?
a- broke b- discovered c- invented d- expected
43. When did America.....Iraq to get rid of Saddam Hussein?
a- destroy b- beat c- conquer d- Compete
44. Have you.....yourself for your exams?
a- broken b- conquered c- discovered d- prepared
45. It wouldn't be.....if a team of 5 members played against a team of 11 members.
a- fair b- peaceful c- modern d- famous
46. I play tennis.....at least twice a week.
a- regularly b- casually c- usually d- rarely
47. We felt.....when our Egyptian Football Team could beat Italy.
a- admirable b- wonderful c- proud d- healthy
48. is a Japanese sport which is a kind of fighting.
a- Squash b- Olympics c- Athletics d- Judo
49. When he came third in the race, he won the.....medal.
a- gold b- bronze c- diamond d- silver
50. Doing daily simple can make you keep fit.
a- exercise b- athletics c- race d- competition

Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Amateur athletes are paid a lot of money to take part in the Games.
2. Football and handball are group sports.
3. Have you ready for the exams?
4. He any more plays tennis.
5. He came first and won the silver medal
6. He came three in the race.
7. He plays football regular at least twice a week.
8. How many circles are there in the Olympic Games signal?
9. I couldn't take care in the race because I had broken my leg.
10. I had to buy some sugar as there was not some left .
11. I watched the match in TV.
12. I'm pride that the athletes from my country do well in the Olympics.
13. In our English class, the students usually take place to answer the teacher's questions.
14. International sport can useful the individuals and their countries.
15. It is not equal when three people play against just one person.
16. Italy won France in the final match.
17. Judo is a Japanese sport which is a kind of racing.
18. Judo is a sport in which two men wearing gloves hit each other.
19. Olympic Games are particularly famous as athletics.
20. On school trips, the older children usually take turns of the younger ones.
21. Our plane took up two hours late because of bad weather.
22. Squash and running are examples of single sports.
23. The earthquake conquered a lot of houses in our area.
24. The Olympic Games is an international sport festival which takes place every four years.
25. The professional is someone who does something they enjoy it.
26. The swimmer came third and won the gold medal.
27. Today we're going to make a quiz about international sport.
28. What kind of feast was the Olympic Games at first?
29. When the Romans conquered Greece the Games missed their religious meaning.
30. Where did the Olympic Games take part in 2004?
31. Who earned the Football World Cup in 2006?
32. You should not make troubles in the class.
33. Your job is the period of time in your life you spend working.
34. Zola Budd broke the world register for women's 5000 metres.

The Present Perfect Continuous

Form Subj. الفاعل + have/has + been + v.ing

- We have been waiting here for over two hours.
- She has been working at that company for three years.

Negation Subject + hasn't / haven't + been + v.ing.....

- We haven't been waiting here for over two hours.
- She hasn't been working at that company for three years.

Yes/No Q Have /Has + Subj. الفاعل + been + v.ing ?

- Have you been waiting here for over an hour?
- Yes, we have (been waiting here for an hour).
- Has she been working at this company for three years?
- No, she hasn't (been working at this company for three years).

Wh-' Q .W. + have/has+ Subj. الفاعل + been + v.ing... ?

- How long have you been waiting here? - Where has she been working for three years ?

Uses

- يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر للتعبير عن :

- حدث بدأ في الماضي و ما زال مستمرا حتي الوقت الحاضر :

- We have been waiting for you all day. -They have been studying since 5 o'clock.

- حدث تم بانتظام بدأ في الماضي واستمر حتي الآن :

- I've been learning Spanish for the last few months. -I've been running a lot recently.
- It has been raining heavily for the past three days.

- تفسير لموقف في الحاضر :

- She is tired. She has been working all day.

- وغالبا ما تكون في الجملة كلمات تدل علي الاستمرار :

since.../ for... / for... now /.....

- He has been working there ever since he graduated.
- He has been working there for a long time. -It has been raining for three days now.
- They have been doing the homework since 6 o'clock.
- I have been living here for 10 years and I don't intend to move.

- يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر مع How long :

- How long have you been smoking?

- ولكن لاحظ استخدام How long ago بمعنى When في الماضي البسيط :

How long ago did you do the job? = When did you do the job?-

- يستخدم هذا الزمن غالبا مع الأفعال التي تستغرق وقتا طويلا إلي حد ما مثل :

Teach- learn- rain- cook- sleep- play- run- study- write- read- stay.....etc.

- The baby has been sleeping for the last six hours.

-إذا ذكر عدد مرات حدوث الفعل يستخدم المضارع التام present perfect :

- He has been writing forty short stories. (X)
- He has written forty short stories. (✓)

-لاحظ أن هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة :

- I have been owning this car for 7 years now. (X)
- I have owned this car for 7 years now. (✓)
- I have been knowing him for three months now. (X)
- I have known him for three months now. (✓)

Have + object + P.P.

- هذه الصيغة تعني أن شخصا آخر غير الفاعل هو الذي قام بالفعل لصالح الفاعل:
- لاحظ استخدام have في نفس زمن الجملة و يمكن أن يأتي هذا التركيب في الأزمنة المختلفة:

Present simple	have/has
Present cont.	am /is /are (having)
Present perfect	have / has(had)
Past simple	had
Past cont.	was / were(having)
Past perfect	had had
Future simple	will / shall(have)
Modals	Can/ may/should/ must/ be going to/used to + (have)

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| -Will you polish your shoes yourself? | = -No, I will have them polished. |
| - Did she type the letter herself? | = -No, she had it typed. |
| - Someone had swept the floor for us. | = -We had had the floor swept. |
| -Someone fixed my car yesterday. | = -I had my car fixed yesterday . |

- و من الممكن استخدام (get) بنفس الطريقة التي تستخدم بها (have):
- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| - The barber is going to cut my hair. | = - I am going to (have) get my hair cut. |
| - Someone is painting his flat. | = - He is (having) getting his flat painted. |

Exercises

Choose the correct answer :

64. Nourfour books by Dickens.
 a- has been reading b- have been reading c- have read d- has read
65. How long.....? – The park is flooded.
 a- is it raining b- has it been raining c- will it be raining d- was it raining
66. Hesham.....in a band since 2001.
 a- plays b- was playing c- has been playing d- is playing
67. Look! Someone..... that window.
 a- have broken b- has broken c- has been breaking d- hasn't broken
68. We.....Susan for years.
 a- know b- 've been known c- 've known d- knew
69. I.....my grandparents many times this year.
 a- have visited b- was visiting c- have been visiting d- have been visited
70.have you been studying English?
 a- How long b- How long ago c- How much d- When
71. You.....your room for more than six hours. When will you finish?
 a- cleaned b- have been cleaning c- are cleaning d- have cleaned
72. The speaker.....for two hours. I wish he'd stop. It's very boring.
 a- talked b- has been talking c- has talked d- is talking
73. She has never.....to school by scooter before.
 a- come b- been coming c- came d- coming
74.to this club before?
 a- Have you been b- Have you been going c- Have you gone d- Do you go
75. She.....in Liverpool all her life.
 a- lived b- has been living c- was living d- has lived
76. I letters all day.
 a- wrote b- have been writing c- am writing d- have written
77. He..... on that project for two years, and not finished.
 a- worked b- am working c- have been working d- have worked
78. It.....for two hours. Now the sky is clear.
 a- rained b- has been raining c- is raining d- has rained
79. She's awful. She..... about herself non-stop all evening.
 a- is talking b- has been talked c- has been talking d- has talked

80. The forest fires.....for three weeks now. We need a lot of rain to put them out.
a- has burnt b- have been burning c- has been burning d- have burnt
81. It's the first time I.....the skateboard.
a- see b- have been seeing c- saw d- have seen
82. I.....my friend for ages.
a- didn't see b- haven't seen c- haven't been seeing d- am not seeing
83. I.....this essay all evening.
a- wrote b- 've been writing c- was writing d- 've written
84. We.....six cups of coffee today.
a- were drinking b- have drunk c- have been drinking d- had drunk
85. I.....my aunt six times this year.
a- visit b- have been visiting c-) have visited d- was visiting
86. I haven't seen him.....we were together.
a- when b- since c- for d- ago
87. I have.....a car since 2004.
a- had b- been having c- having d- had been
88. She's.....three letters this afternoon.
a- written b- been writing c- wrote d- writing
89. Great news! You the competition
a- 've won b- have been winning c- haven't won d- are winning
90. Ali..... his wife since he was a child.
a- has known b- hasn't known c- has been known d- was known
91. I.....for my test since I got up.
a- have been studying b- 've studied c- don't study d- didn't study
92. I'm tired. I.....for ten hours.
a- work b- 've been working c- 've worked d- haven't worked
93. I've.....this page four times and I still don't understand it all.
a- reading b- not read c- been reading d- read
94. He's in hospital because he has an accident,
a- had b- been having c- having d- not had
95. Ouch! I.....my finger!
a- don't cut b- will cut c- have been cutting d- 've cut
96. My mother is making sandwiches, she.....bread all morning.
a- has cut b- has been cutting c- was cut d- has cut
97. Great news! You.....the competition.
a- 've been working b- 've worked c- work d- haven't worked
98. They're angry. They.....for ages.
a- am waiting b- waited c- has waited d- have been waiting

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. Ahmed has been playing tennis since eight years.
2. Ali has been eating meat three times today.
3. Ali hasn't been visiting his aunt for two months.
4. Great! I have been doing all my homework, so I can watch TV now.
5. Have you been seeing the new film at the cinema?
6. He has been writing six letters to her friends.
7. He has done his homework for three hours and he hasn't finished yet.
8. He has gone to London in 1995.
9. He has studied English since five years.
10. He has watched TV since he returned from school.
11. He hasn't been watching a match for two months.
12. He haven't emailed us since last month.
13. He last visit us when my father came back home.
14. He lives in London for 20 years now and he doesn't intend to move.
15. He plays squash all morning. That's why he looks so tired.
16. How long is it since you are meeting him?
17. I didn't see my cousin since the last school holiday.
18. I have been drinking three cups of tea this morning.

19. I have been knowing Esraa since I started primary school.
20. I have been owning a car since 2003.
21. I have been visiting the Pyramids five times all my life.
22. I have drawn and I haven't finished yet.
23. I have never been reading an English story before this time.
24. I haven't been eating fish since I was in Alexandria.
25. I haven't talked to him since he leaves school.
26. I haven't eaten my lunch just.
27. I last visited my grandmother for three weeks.
28. I'm sorry my clothes are dirty. I clean my garage.
29. It has been raining for five hours and the sky is clear now.
30. It's along time since he has been written to me.
31. It's the first time he is flying in a helicopter.
32. It's the first time I've never eaten fish.
33. It's a year since he has phoned us.
34. I've been drinking three cups of tea this morning.
35. Mona has been writing a letter to her friend two months ago.
36. Mona hasn't been having a job for five years.
37. My brother has just been passing his university exams – that's why he looks so happy.
38. My father has been travelling abroad six times in the last two months.
39. Nada has been having a job since 2004.
40. She has been reading the paper three times this week.
41. She has last visited me when she was 10 years old.
42. She has washed the dishes since six o'clock, and she hasn't finished yet.
43. They've playing squash all morning. That's why they look so tired.

Translation

Translate into Arabic:

The Olympic games are a sports festival which is held every four years. The last Olympic Games were held in Athens , the capital of Greece. In it Egypt won a gold medal for wrestling by Karam Gaber in addition to a bronze medal .

We are most successful at things we enjoy. So you should try to enjoy your work. Think how happy you will be when you have reached your goals. Think about that happiness while you are working and you will enjoy your work.

Exercise is essential for the young and the old alike . Physical fitness and reasonable weight are fixed criteria for good health . Physical fitness can delay aging .

Translate into English:

- تصدر بلادنا الكثير من المنتجات الجيدة إلى الخارج في كل عام.

- استطاع المصري عمر سمرة الوصول إلى قمة جبل افرست عام 2007.

- تعتبر الألعاب الأولمبية مهرجانا رياضيا يقام كل أربع سنوات، تتنافس فيه العديد من الدول

- يجب تشجيع الرياضيين من أجل الحصول على ميداليات أولمبية .

Test 9

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to the following situations:

1. Someone suggests going to the shops this afternoon. You agree to go. What do you say?
2. You advise your sister about her exam.
3. You and your brother or sister is discussing what to buy your mother for her birthday. You think a necklace would be a good present. Suggest this idea to your brother or sister.
4. You ask your father who won the Gold medal for judo in 2004.

2- Say where these mini-dialogues are taking place and who the speakers are:

- 5- A: On which platform is my train? B : platform 5 sir.
 A : Will you carry my two bags? B : At your service , sir.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

- 6 - A : Can I help you Madam? B : Yes, my car suddenly broke down.

Place - Speaker A: - Speaker B:

B- Vocabulary and Structure

3- Choose the correct answer:

1. Squash is sport
 a) a team b) a single c) an individual d) a personal
2. I'd love to take in the Olympic Games but I'll never be good enough.
 a) place b) care c) turn d) part
3. The of the year for my family was my sister's birthday.
 a) highlight b) height c) benefit d) worst
4. John doesn't get paid for playing football. He's
 a) a professional b) a player c) an amateur d) a career
5. If you want to keep fit, go running. It's a very good form of
 a) exercise b) practice c) food d) work
6. is a sport for which you need to have a lot of equipment such as long ropes, and you should not be afraid of being in high places.
 a) Rising b) Fighting c) Boxing d) Climbing
7. Some people say that is not a sport. But it is excellent exercise for the brain!
 a) water-skiing b) chess c) netball d) athletics
8. Many cities have different for different times of the year, which the people celebrate with food, drink, entertainment and different traditions.
 a) festivals b) festivities c) games d) sports
9. I my brother's car all morning – and he says it's still dirty.
 a) have cleaned b) am cleaning c) have been cleaning d) clean
10. So far today, I e-mails to six of my friends to tell them the good news.
 a) have written b) am writing c) have been writing d) wrote
11. Samir hockey since he was eight years old and now he is in the under-15 national team.
 a) played b) has played c) has been playing d) was playing
12. I all my homework and now I am ready to go out!
 a) have been finished b) finished c) have been finishing d) have finished
13. Sara to call Rania all afternoon, but each time she calls the number is busy.
 a) has been trying b) has tried c) tried d) is trying
14. What your mother for her birthday tomorrow?
 a) have you been buying b) have you bought c) you bought d) had you bought
15. I the Olympic Games every four years for my whole life.
 a) was watching b) have been watching c) have watched d) watched
16. I the Olympic Games all evening and now I'm going to bed.
 a) was watching b) have been watching c) have watched d) watched

4- Find the mistakes in each of the following sentences then write them correctly:

1. He is Egypt and lives in Cairo.
2. He plays tennis and she plays tennis so.
3. I admire my grandmother most than any other person.
4. They just have finished .
5. We haven't meet for five years .
6. What have you been done since we last met?

C- Reading Comprehension

5- Read the following passage and then answer the questions:

Walking along the colourful street market, I realized it would be impossible to leave this place empty-handed. There were imported fruits and vegetables, handmade clothes, beautifully crafted jewellery and much more.

After I had finished my shopping for the day, I had to drag myself away carrying lots of heavy bags, but feeling quite pleased with myself. Should you ever find yourself in Amsterdam, make sure you visit this fantastic European market. The combination of a lively atmosphere, delicious food and traditional goods makes this an experience not to be missed.

When I arrived in the early morning, the market had just opened, but the hustle and bustle of shoppers, tourists and street musicians had already started. The place was jumping with life. The fragrance of freshly cut flowers made the place look bright and festive, As I wandered along, looking at the freshly baked cakes and smelling the mouth-watering aromas of the different pies. I suddenly realized how hungry I was. When I tried one, it tasted delicious.

A-answer the following questions:

- 1-Why is shopping in the street market a unique experience according to the writer?
- 2-What advice did the writer give his readers?
- 3-When did the writer realize that he was hungry?

Choose the correct answer:

- 4-The market place looked very bright because of
- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| a) freshly baked cakes | b) fresh food |
| c) freshly cut flowers | d) freshly ground coffee |
- 5-The expression hustle and bustle means
- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| a) energetic movement | b) awful quarrels |
| c) terrible smell | d) good food |

6- Read the following passage and then answer the questions:

Cheques have largely replaced money as a means of exchange. It should not be forgotten that cheques are quite valueless in themselves. A shopkeeper always runs a certain risk when he accepts a cheque and he is right if he refuses to do so.

An old wealthy friend of mine told me he had an extremely unpleasant experience. He went to a famous jewellery shop and asked to be shown some pearl necklaces. After examining several trays, he decided to buy a fine string of pearls and asked if he could pay by cheque. The assistant agreed, but the moment my friend signed his name, he was invited into the manager's office.

The manager explained that a person who had used the same name as his offered the shop a worthless cheque not long ago. My friend got very angry and was about to leave when the police arrived. Then the police asked my friend to copy out a note. Fortunately, my friend's handwriting was quite unlike the thief's. The police apologized to him and allowed him to leave.

A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- Why did the shopkeeper refuse to deal with his customers by cheques?
- 2- Why was the writer's friend invited into the manager's office once he signed his name?
- 3- Find words which mean: a) sometimes b) rich

B) Choose the correct answer:

4- Some customers were arrested by the police for presenting ----- cheques.

- a) valuable b) precious c) worthless d) priceless

5- The writer's friend was lucky as his handwriting was ----- the thief's.

- a) like b) different from c) the same as d) similar to

D- The Novel

7) (A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why was Gulliver more afraid of the baby than of the older giants and the cat?

2- What did the baby girl do when Gulliver shouted loudly?

B- Read the following quotation. then answer the questions

4. I realised that nothing is big or small unless you compare it with something else

- a) Who said this?
b) When did Gulliver realize this?
c) What did Gulliver think there was\ must exist?

C- Complete the following sentences:

- 1- The farmer did not punish his son for picking Gulliver up.**
2- Gulliver was more afraid of the cat than of the baby.

E- Writing

8- Write a paragraph of 7 sentences about

A form of exercise that you enjoy doing

F- Translation

9- A) Translate into Arabic:

In the past, trade - the buying and selling of large quantities of goods - was on a small scale. Today trade has greatly developed and increased. Goods are now transported quickly and safely by air, sea, road and railway.

.....
.....

B) Translate into English:

- تم تجريد بعض الرياضيون من ميدالياتهم بسبب تعاطي المنشطات .

.....
.....

- علينا أن نعلم أولادنا الاعتماد على النفس والثقة بالنفس .

.....
.....